

WORLD BANK
EDITORIAL STYLE GUIDE
2016



CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION	1
2. THE EDITORIAL PROCESS	3
Managing the Editorial Process	4
Text	6
Figures and Other Pictorial Elements	7
Math	7
Tables	7
Editing	8
Text	8
Figures and Other Pictorial Elements	10
Math	10
Tables	10
Proofreading	11
3. PARTS OF THE BOOK	12
4. PERMISSIONS	14
5. PUNCTUATION	16
Ellipses	16
Commas	16
Colons and Semicolons	17
Question Marks	17
Hyphens and Dashes	17
Parentheses and Brackets	17
Slashes	18
Lists	18
6. URLS, DOIs, AND E-MAIL ADDRESSES	20
7. WORD TREATMENT	21
Names	21
The World Bank Group	21
Organizations Other Than the World Bank	24
Personal Names	24
Place Names	24

Brand Names	25
Titles of Works	25
Terms	27
Word Division	28
8. ABBREVIATIONS	29
9. NUMBERS AND MEASUREMENTS	31
Punctuation and Inclusive Numbers	32
Physical Quantities	32
Percentages, Decimal Fractions, and Ratios	32
Money	32
Dates	33
10. QUOTATIONS	35
Treatment	35
Punctuation	35
11. TEXT HEADINGS	37
12. TEXT BOXES	38
13. FIGURES AND MAPS	40
Titles	41
Unit Indicators	41
Composition	41
Sources	42
Notes	44
Maps	45
Photographs	45
Checklist and Examples for Figures	46
14. TABLES	61
Titles	62
Unit Indicators	62
Column Heads	62
Stub Entries	63
Table Body	63
Sources	64
Notes	64
15. MATHEMATICS	66
Displayed Equations	66
Punctuation	67
Editing Mathematics	67
16. DOCUMENTATION	68
Documentation System: Source Citations	68
Reference Lists and Bibliographies	69
Content	69
Examples	71
17. INDEXES	79

APPENDIXES

A.1	Editorial Checklists for Levels of Editing (A, B, C)	81
A.2a	Sample Style Sheet (blank)	86
A.2b	Sample Style Sheet (actual)	88
A.3	Microsoft Word Formatting Instructions	90
A.4	Document Cleanup Instructions for Copyeditors	94
A.5	Frequently Overlooked Style Rules for Editors and Proofreaders	97
A.6	Author's Checklist for Formal Publishing with ECRPK	99
A.7	Manuscript Preparation Guidelines	102
A.8a	Basic Editorial Quality Control Checklist	110
A.8b	Extended Editorial Quality Control Checklist	114
B.1	Proofreading Checklist for Categories 1 and 2	119
B.2	Proofreading Checklist for Category 3	122
B.3	Adobe Acrobat Instructions and Examples	125
B.4	Sample Copyright Page	130
C	Country, Economy, and Territory Names	131
D	Currency Units	138
E	Common Abbreviations	144
F	Names and Terms	150
G	Alternative Words and Phrases	162
H	World Bank Map Guidelines	166
I	World Integrated Trade Solution (WITS) Country Names and International Standards Organization (ISO) Codes	170
	Index	177



1. INTRODUCTION

The *World Bank Editorial Style Guide* is an essential reference for manuscript editors (substantive and mechanical editors), proofreaders, and production editors. It is a supplement to other editorial references, in particular, *The Chicago Manual of Style* (annual subscription available online), 16th edition, and *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition. It focuses on issues specific to the World Bank/International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) or for which *Chicago* provides multiple options.

The professional recommendations made in the guide are designed to meet the following objectives:

- To ensure that every publication achieves a standard of professionalism appropriate for these members and on par with the publications of similar organizations
- To ensure stylistic consistency, primarily within individual publications and secondarily across all World Bank publications
- To increase efficiency by eliminating the need to repeatedly address the same stylistic details for every publication.

Adjustments may be made for individual publications to address client needs or to accommodate styles established prior to manuscript editing. Such adjustments should be incorporated throughout the publication, should not introduce errors, should be considered acceptable in scholarly publishing, and should be noted on a style sheet.

PUBLISHING CATEGORIES

The External and Corporate Relations Publishing and Knowledge (ECRPK) division of the World Bank publishes products in the following categories:

Category 1: Annual Corporate, Regional, and Sectoral Flagships

This category encompasses key annual flagship publications, including the *World Development Report*, the *Global Monitoring Report*, and the *Latin American and Caribbean Studies* series. Publications in this category undergo rigorous external review. They are disseminated in both electronic and print formats and are included in the World Bank eLibrary and the Open Knowledge Repository.

Category 2: Regional/Sectoral Peer-Reviewed Series and Practitioner Manuals

These publications represent quality research output or operational practice of a World Bank region, network, or sector. To qualify for formal publication, manuscripts must first be selected and approved by a region, network, or sector management team or publications committee and must undergo a formal peer review process. Publications in this category are disseminated in both electronic and print formats and are included in the World Bank eLibrary and the Open Knowledge Repository.

Category 3: Directions in Development and World Bank Studies

These publications result primarily from economic and sector work as well as other regional and sectoral applied research. Publications in this category are disseminated mainly as ebooks, with optional printing provided as needed through regional print-on-demand hubs. They are included in the World Bank eLibrary and the Open Knowledge Repository.

Other Knowledge Products

These documents are disseminated in electronic form only through free channels, such as the Open Knowledge Repository. They include Knowledge Notes, Case Studies, and Working Papers. Unlike the publications in Categories 1, 2, and 3, they can be as short as two pages in length.

eProducts

These products are selectively developed on the basis of institutional priorities and external demand. They include Web portals, such as the World Bank *eAtlas of Global Development*, and mobile apps, such as *World Bank at a Glance* for the iPhone.

2. THE EDITORIAL PROCESS

2.1 *The editorial process defined.* The editorial process comprises manuscript editing (substantive and mechanical editing) and proofreading. These tasks are described from the perspectives of the production editor (sections 2.5–29), manuscript editor (sections 2.30–45), and proofreader (sections 2.46–51). Typesetting is covered to the extent that it relates to these functions. The designing and indexing processes are not discussed.

2.2 *Manuscript editing defined.* Manuscript editing occurs after the writing and developmental editing phases have been completed and the manuscript has entered production. It consists of a substantive or a mechanical edit, or a combination of the two. For more information about manuscript editing, refer to sections 2.30–45 and *Chicago* 2.45–66, 2.69, and 2.75–86.

Fact-checking is the responsibility of the authors; however, manuscript editors should query obvious errors (*Chicago* 2.53).

Manuscript editing includes cleanup of the electronic files before and after editing and preparation of those files for typesetting or other conversion.

Appendix A.1 of this style guide lists specific editorial tasks for levels A, B, and C. **Appendixes A.3** and **A.4** offer guidance on document formatting and provide additional instructions for postediting document cleanup.

Appendix A.5 is Frequently Overlooked Style Rules for Editors and Proofreaders. **Appendix A.6** is the short Author's Checklist for Formal Publishing with ECRPK. **Appendix A.7** is the longer guidance document with Manuscript Preparation Guidelines for editors preparing the final files for submission to ECRPK. **Appendix A.8a** is the Basic Editorial Quality Control Checklist used by specified vendors for books in the Directions in Development series or any special project that will be copyedited following the Editorial Quality Control process. **Appendix A.8b** is the Extended Editorial Quality Control Checklist for World Bank Studies or any special project that will not be copyedited following the Editorial Quality Control process.

2.3 *Proofreading defined.* Proofreading occurs after the pages have been typeset or have gone through an electronic conversion process. It typically consists of an editorial proofread rather than a word-for-word comparison proofread. The

World Bank uses two levels of proofreading, defined in **appendixes B.1** and **B.2**; it is the responsibility of the production editor to provide guidance to the proofreader on the level desired. **Appendix B.3** provides guidance on marking indicated changes using Adobe Acrobat.

For more information about proofreading, refer to sections 2.46–51 and *Chicago* 2.97, 2.100–104, and 2.107–136. *Chicago* 2.113 allows orphans but not widows.

Do not include instructions to the typesetter to make global changes.

- 2.4 *The editorial team.* The people described in this section are involved in the manuscript editing and proofreading processes. The processes described apply to manuscripts submitted to the ECRPK.

WORLD BANK

Client

May be the author(s), volume editor(s), or a person coordinating the process on behalf of the author(s) or editor(s); provides the original manuscript, then reviews and approves the edited manuscript and page proofs; communicates primarily with the production editor

Production editor

Manages the production process; communicates with the client, editor, typesetter, and proofreader

VENDORS AND CONSULTANTS

Manuscript editor

Edits the original manuscript, reviews and incorporates revisions provided by the client and production editor, and prepares the manuscript files for typesetting; communicates with the production editor

Typesetter

Lays out the book and incorporates hardcopy edits to figures and math as well as to any tables edited on hard copy; communicates with the production editor

Proofreader

Reviews at least first page proofs and frequently second page proofs; may compile changes from the client and production editor; communicates with the production editor

MANAGING THE EDITORIAL PROCESS (*production editor*)

- 2.5 *Materials to be provided to the manuscript editor.* The production editor provides the manuscript editor with an introductory letter with the schedule and deliverables and formats, the electronic files for the manuscript, a sample publication upon request, an editorial checklist, and a style sheet if one exists.

The production editor also answers the following questions:

- How many rounds of client review are expected to occur?
- Will work proceed on a flow basis?
- Should the figures be edited before the text?

- Is there a specific need for the figures to remain in the manuscript files or to be moved into separate files?
- Is there a specific need for the figures to be edited electronically or on hard copy? In most cases, the preference is for the editorial changes and instructions to the typesetter to be typed into the manuscript files; hardcopy edits and scans are appropriate in some instances, and the production editor will indicate the preference.
- Should the copyeditor follow the preferred style for headings, which requires headline-style capitalization?
- Which manuscript elements should appear in the table of contents? Section 3.2 lists the preferred list of elements to include in the table of contents, but the production editor may find a simple listing of chapter titles and authors sufficient if the manuscript is a multiauthor work.

2.6 *Materials to be provided to the typesetter.* The production editor provides the typesetter with the clean manuscript files:

- Edits of figures, maps, and uneditable tables: These should be typed into the electronic file as instructions to the typesetter; in some cases, at the production editor's discretion, they may be provided as scans of hardcopy editing. These edited files may be sent in advance of the text files.
- Schedule
- Typesetting transmittal form and composition guidelines, including instruction on the placement of notes and references if different from the default of chapter placement for these elements
- Template
- Editorial style sheet.

In a few cases, the production editor may arrange for the manuscript editor to send the edited files and hard copy directly to the typesetter.

2.7 *Materials to be provided to the proofreader.* The production editor provides the proofreader with the following:

- Proofreading checklist
- Page proofs in the form of electronic PDFs or as hard copy (depending on the proofreader's capabilities)
- Sample publication
- Schedule
- Style sheet
- Any hardcopy edits of figures, maps, and tables.

If the proofreading is on a flow basis, the production editor will provide a working table of contents and working style sheet (**appendixes A.2a and A.2b** of this guide). For any reviews after first page proofs, the production editor will provide the foul proofs to the proofreader.

Text

2.8 *Transmission of the edited manuscript to the client.* The manuscript editor provides two versions of the edited manuscript to the production editor:

- A redlined PDF in which all changes have been tracked
- A clean Word document in which all edits have been accepted.

Upon receiving both sets of files, the production editor sends both the PDFs and the clean Word documents to the client with any accompanying graphics files, for reference.

2.9 *Client review.* The client makes tracked changes in the clean Word document, referring to the PDF as necessary to view the changes made by the manuscript editor.

2.10 *Transmission of revisions to the editor.* The production editor adds his or her own changes, if any, to those of the client and sends the tracked Word file to the manuscript editor, who will edit the changes and prepare the file for typesetting.

2.11 *Rounds of review during the editorial phase.* Typically, only one round of client review occurs during the editorial phase. However, some books may require additional rounds of review. The production editor should provide this information to the manuscript editor at the start of the project or as soon as the need for additional rounds becomes evident.

2.12 *Transmission of the edited files to the typesetter.* Upon receiving the clean, edited files from the manuscript editor, the production editor performs a cursory review and then sends the files to the typesetter.

2.13 *Page proof circulation.* The typesetter provides page proofs to the production editor as PDFs. The production editor forwards the page proofs, with any accompanying hardcopy edits, to the client and proofreader for review.

2.14 *Page proof revisions.* The client either prints out the PDFs and makes revisions on hard copy or uses Adobe Acrobat to make revisions electronically.

2.15 *Compilation of changes.* The production editor reviews the client's and proofreader's changes and compiles a master set of revisions.

2.16 *Transmission of changes to the typesetter.* The production editor sends the compiled master set of changes to the typesetter, who incorporates all changes and provides revised page proofs.

2.17 *Rounds of review during proofreading phase.* Typically, two rounds of client review occur: the first as described in sections 2.13–14, and the second for final approval before printing (refer to section 2.18). However, some projects may require more rounds of review.

The proofreader sees one round of page proofs at a minimum and might be asked to check corrections in the revised page proofs. The production editor will provide the latest PDFs and the previous proofs.

2.18 *Final approval.* The production editor provides final or almost final pages to the client for approval. Once approval has been received and the production editor has ensured that the typesetter has incorporated all changes, the files are collected and provided to the print coordinator for conversion.

Figures and Other Pictorial Elements

- 2.19 *Transmission of edits to the typesetter.* Upon receiving the edited figures or other pictorial elements from the manuscript editor, the production editor forwards them to the typesetter. The edits may be sent either in advance of or with the text, depending on the production editor's instructions at the start of the project.
- 2.20 *Typesetting.* The typesetter creates the figures or other pictorial elements, concurrently incorporating the editorial changes, and provides them to the production editor as PDFs. They may be provided either in advance of the text or as part of the first page proofs, depending on the production editor's instructions at the start of the project.
- 2.21 *Review process.* The remainder of the process is the same as that for text. Refer to sections 2.13–18 of this guide. If the figures undergo one round of review in advance of the text, the revised versions are placed in the first page proofs.
- 2.22 *Maps.* Cartography must clear all maps furnished by the client before publication. Prior to printing, Cartography should also clear maps it created to ensure that the typesetter did not inadvertently make any changes if the typesetter worked in the map files.

Math

- 2.23 *Transmission of edits to the typesetter.* Upon receiving the edited math from the manuscript editor, the production editor makes a scan or PDF. The production editor then forwards the changes and the original for reference to the typesetter and keeps a copy for the proofreader. The client does not review the edits at this stage.
- 2.24 *Typesetting.* The typesetter incorporates the editorial changes while creating the first page proofs, which are provided to the production editor as PDFs.
- 2.25 *Review process.* The remainder of the process is the same as that for text. Refer to sections 2.13–18 of this guide.

Tables

- 2.26 *Word tables edited electronically.* If the tables were edited electronically, the production editor follows the process used for text. Refer to sections 2.8–18 of this guide.
- 2.27 *Transmission of hardcopy edits to the typesetter.* Upon receiving the edited tables from the manuscript editor, the production editor forwards them to the typesetter.
- 2.28 *Typesetting.* The typesetter incorporates the editorial changes while creating the first page proofs, which are provided to the production editor as PDFs.
- 2.29 *Review process.* The remainder of the process is the same as that for text. Refer to sections 2.13–18 of this guide.

EDITING (*manuscript editor*)

2.30 *Materials provided to the manuscript editor.* The production editor provides the manuscript editor with the following:

- Electronic files for the manuscript
- Sample publication upon request
- Editorial checklist
- Schedule
- Style sheet, if one exists.

The production editor also answers the following questions, as appropriate: How many rounds of client review are expected to occur? Will work proceed on a flow basis? Should the figures be edited before the text? Is there a specific need for the figures to remain in the manuscript files or to be moved into separate files? Is there a specific need for the figures to be edited electronically or on hard copy? Do headings use the preferred headline-style capitalization? Which manuscript elements should appear in the table of contents? Section 3.2 lists the preferred list of elements to include in the table of contents, but the production editor may find a simple listing of chapter titles and authors sufficient, if the manuscript is a multiauthor work.

2.31 *File organization.* Authors of World Bank Studies should submit manuscripts to ECRPK as single consolidated files. Authors of books should submit manuscripts as individual files: the front matter, chapters, and back matter. However, if the manuscript is provided in one consolidated electronic file, the manuscript editor should divide it into separate files prior to editing.

2.32 *Text boxes.* Unless otherwise instructed by the production editor, the manuscript editor should move any Word text box material from the formatted box and into the main text. The manuscript editor should add instructions to the typesetter that indicate such text material is a text box by preceding the material with <<text box>> and following it with <<end text box>>. The empty formatted Word text box can then be deleted.

2.33 *Graphics files and embedded graphics.* Graphics should remain in place in the Word files for reference. In the absence of specific instructions from the production editor, the manuscript editor may choose whether to work on the graphics in the manuscript files or to copy the graphics into separate files, one for each chapter, and work on them in the separate files. If the graphics are moved into separate files for copyediting, the files should be set up by chapter number, for example, "Chapter 1 graphics."

Whichever option is chosen, the manuscript editor should always insert a callout indicating where the graphic should appear (for example, <<Insert figure 2.3 about here.>>).

Text

2.34 *Editing.* The manuscript editor makes changes in the electronic document using the tracking function; all changes should be tracked. The production editor may request that basic formatting and tagging changes be made first with the tracking turned off to minimize what the client will review, but this instruction will vary with the production editor.

- 2.35 *Hyphenation*. The editor should turn off automatic hyphenation during manuscript editing. Only hard hyphens (that is, hyphens in compound words) should be used. Refer to *Chicago* 2.12.
- 2.36 *Queries*. Author queries, in yellow highlight and double brackets, should be placed within the text itself. The editor should not use the Comments feature in Word. The exception to this rule applies to vendors providing the Category 3 Editorial Quality Control check; for these products, the vendors should use the Comments feature.

Example

This weakness in the growth of private sector debt flows is unprecedented in the post-2003 period (figure 1.3). **[[AQ: Change to “post-2000 period”? Figure 1.3 begins with 2001.]]**

Queries for the production editor should be resolved before the edited manuscript is provided for client review. Only author queries should appear in the manuscript.

- 2.37 *Provision of files*. The manuscript editor sends the edited files to the production editor either one chapter at a time or all at once when editing is completed, depending on the production editor’s instructions at the start of the project.

The manuscript editor sends two versions of the edited manuscript to the production editor:

- A redlined PDF in which all changes have been tracked
- A clean Word document in which all changes have been accepted and the text files formatted according to the Microsoft Word Formatting Instructions (**appendix A.3** of this guide).

In addition, the manuscript editor provides all accompanying graphics files if they were duplicated and set up separate from the text files.

- 2.38 *Client review*. In most cases, one round of client review occurs during the editorial phase. A few books may need additional review. The production editor will provide this information at the start of the project or as soon as the need for additional rounds becomes evident.
- 2.39 *Revisions*. The client makes tracked changes electronically in the clean version of the edited manuscript and responds to queries. The production editor forwards the client’s changes and comments to the manuscript editor.
- 2.40 *Incorporation of revisions*. Upon receiving the client’s revisions from the production editor, the manuscript editor reviews and incorporates all changes, prepares the files for typesetting (refer to the Document Cleanup Instructions for Copyeditors in **appendix A.4** of this guide for more information), and provides the edited files to either the production editor or the typesetter, depending on the instructions for the project.

The clean files should not contain any tracking. However, any outstanding or new queries should be moved from the text to Comments so the production editor and typesetter can see them easily.

Figures and Other Pictorial Elements

- 2.41 *Editing figures.* The manuscript editor edits the figures either electronically—typing clear instructions for the typesetter directly below the figure—or on hard copy, depending on the production editor’s instructions at the start of the project.
- 2.42 *Editing other pictorial elements.* Any other pictorial elements, such as maps or illustrations, should be edited the same way as figures.

Math

- 2.43 *File format.* Mathematical equations should be shown in the Word text files of the manuscript or provided as PDFs in separate files. This is to ensure accuracy as the files are processed.

Editing math. The editor prints out the math (unless the production editor provided hard copy), marks any changes on the hard copy, and sends the edited hard copy to the production editor.

File organization. If the math is provided in a separate Math folder from the manuscript, include a picture of the math in the manuscript file for reference.

File names. If a file contains multiple equations, include the chapter number or appendix letter in the file name, and label each equation by number within the document.

Examples

01 Ch_1 Math.docx
02 Ch_2 Math.docx
08 App_A Math.docx

If each file consists of only one equation, identify the equation by number in the file name and in the document.

Examples

Equation 1_1.xlsx
Equation 1_2.xlsx
Equation 2_1.xlsx

Tables

- 2.44 *Editing Word tables.* Tables created in Word or Excel can be edited electronically in accordance with the process described for text editing (refer to sections 2.34–40).

If electronic editing is not conducive to marking changes related to table composition, the editor has two options: (a) insert instructions to the typesetter directly into the Word file under the table, or (b) print out the tables and edit the hard copy (refer to section 2.45).

- 2.45 *Editing tables in formats other than Word or Excel.* If the tables were created in a program other than Word or Excel, editorial changes should be listed below the table in the electronic file; if this is not feasible, changes may be written on

hard copy. This procedure includes tables imported into Word as “pictures.” Editors should insert queries to authors to provide such tables in editable format, if possible.

PROOFREADING (proofreader)

- 2.46 *Materials provided to the proofreader.* The production editor provides the proofreader with a proofreading checklist, the page proofs in the form of electronic PDFs or as hard copy (depending on the proofreader’s capabilities), a sample publication, a schedule, the style sheet, and any hardcopy edits to graphics. If the proofreading is on a flow basis, the production editor will provide a working table of contents and working style sheet. For any reviews after first page proofs, the proofreader will receive the foul proofs from either the production editor or the typesetter.
- 2.47 *Proofreading first page proofs.* The proofreader performs a complete editorial proofread in accordance with the proofreading checklist provided by the production editor, verifies that any hardcopy edits were correctly incorporated by the typesetter, and gets a sense of whether the entire manuscript seems to be in place. In most cases, a word-for-word comparison proofread against the edited manuscript is not necessary.
- 2.48 *Revisions and queries.* The preferred method for indicating needed changes and queries is in Adobe Acrobat. In some cases, the production editor may request hardcopy markups; these revisions should be clearly marked on the hard copy, which the proofreader prints out from the PDFs. Revisions should be in dark pen or pencil and at least .75 inch from the outside margins of the page. **Unless otherwise instructed by the production editor, the proofreader should keep queries to a minimum.** Changes that fall within the scope of the proofreading checklist should be made without querying. Any other changes should not be made unless a potentially embarrassing error is discovered. If the proofreading is done on hard copy, the production editor will specify whether the proofreader should write queries on sticky notes and place the notes on the pertinent pages.
- 2.49 *Compilation of corrections.* For some projects, the proofreader may be asked to compile corrections. In these cases, the proofreader should mark client revisions as “AA.”
- 2.50 *Proofreading subsequent page proofs.* The proofreader checks the revised page proofs to ensure that the typesetter incorporated all corrections properly. The proofreader may also be asked to perform a quality control check, for which the production editor will provide a list of tasks. Revisions and queries should be marked as indicated in section 2.48.
- 2.51 *Proofreading the copyright page.* The proofreader should not make text changes on the copyright page unless a clear error is found; a sample page is provided in **appendix B.4** of this guide.

3. PARTS OF THE BOOK

- 3.1 *List of book divisions.* World Bank books may contain any or all of the following elements. The elements should appear in the order and placement indicated below unless the series template dictates otherwise.

FRONT MATTER

Half-title page	i
Series or cover information, list of prior publications, or blank	ii
Title page	iii
Copyright page	iv
Contents	v
Foreword (written by someone other than the author; optional)	recto
Preface (written by the author; optional)	recto
Acknowledgments (if not part of the preface; optional)	recto
About the authors or editors or list of contributors (optional)	recto
Introduction, overview, or executive summary (if not part of text)	recto
Abbreviations	recto or verso

TEXT

First text page (introduction, overview, executive summary, chapter 1, or part title)	1 (recto)
Subsequent chapters with any respective annexes, notes, and references	recto or verso

BACK MATTER

First appendix	recto
Subsequent appendixes	recto or verso
Glossary (optional)	recto
Bibliography (optional, in addition to references at the end of each chapter)	recto
Illustration credits (if not in captions or elsewhere)	recto
Index (optional)	recto

- 3.2 *Table of contents.* The following order should be applied to the table of contents unless the series template dictates otherwise: chapter titles; chapter

authors (in multiauthor books); text headings (typically level A headings only); listing of boxes, figures, maps, and tables.

3.3 *Chapter annexes and book appendixes.* Appendixes to individual chapters are called annexes to avoid confusion with appendixes to the book as a whole. Multiple annexes and appendixes are enumerated with letters rather than numbers to distinguish them from the chapters. For example, annex 3B is the second annex in chapter 3; appendix C is the third appendix in the book.

3.4 *Notes, reference lists, and bibliographies.* Notes and source documentation (reference lists or bibliographies) typically appear at the end of each chapter. Notes precede references or bibliographies.

Reference lists differ from notes and bibliographies in that each entry must correspond to a work cited in the text.

Bibliographies include additional entries that may be of interest to readers but are not directly cited in the text. A book with references at the end of each chapter may also have a bibliography as part of its back matter.

The bibliography may alternatively be titled "**Additional Readings.**"

3.5 *Additional information.* Refer to *Chicago* 1.3, 1.5–34, 1.37–49, and 1.53–65.

3.6 *Considerations for web-based publications.* Editors helping to develop materials may refer to *Chicago* 1.111–117 for insights on incorporating navigation, hyperlinking, and adapting traditional front matter and back matter.

4. PERMISSIONS

4.1 *Written permission.* Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission for the following:

- Use of a substantial amount of copyrighted material of any kind (for example, text, figures, or tables)
- Use of any tables or figures containing pictorial elements (for example, flow charts, art, photographs, or maps)
- Use of any art, photographs, or maps.

See also *Chicago* 4.68–71. **The manuscript editor should flag any portions of the manuscript for which authors must seek reprint permission.** Secure written permission for the following non-Bank materials in the following cases:

- Use of a **substantial** amount of copyrighted material of any kind
- Use of any tables or figures containing **pictorial elements** (for example, flow charts, art, photographs, or maps)
- Use of **any art, photographs, or maps.**

Written permission is generally not required for the following elements:

The doctrine of fair use allows authors to quote from other authors' work or to reproduce small amounts of graphic material based on data, excluding pictorial elements, for purposes of review or criticism or to illustrate or buttress their own points. Authors who follow fair use should ensure that they accurately transcribe any material, give credit to their sources, and do not quote out of context.

Additional information is provided **for subscribers** in *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th Edition, 4.77–87, available at http://www.chicagomanualofstyle.org/16/ch04/ch04_sec077.html.

4.2 *Source documentation.* Full citations are required for all sources regardless of whether written permission is needed. Sources for figures and tables are now treated the same as sources for text. The information required is as follows:

- *For text*, provide either an author-date reference (preferred) or an endnote. Refer to *Chicago* 14.2 for a discussion of the two systems, 15.5–9 for author-date citations, and 14.14–18 for endnotes.
- *For text boxes*, provide either an author-date reference (preferred) or an endnote. A source note is not required for original author-created content.
- *For figures that are original and use text and not data*—for example, flow charts—do not provide a source line.
- *For original (author-created) figures and tables using World Bank data*, provide a note specifying the source of the data (for example, “World Development Indicators Database”); in the absence of this information, provide a note specifying “World Bank data” as the source. Do not use “Authors” or “Author’s compilation.” It is acceptable to start the source line with “An elaboration of ...” or “Based on ...” or similar language.
- *For figures and tables that use non-World Bank data*, provide a source note indicating the source of the data (refer to *Chicago* 3.75).

For figures and tables that are copyrighted material used with permission, use the following source note: “Source: [author-date citation], ©[copyright owner]. Reproduced with permission from [copyright owner]; further permission required for reuse.” Alternatively, specific language provided by the copyright holder may be used. For more information, refer to *Chicago* 4.85.

Whenever reference is being made to a particular passage within a source publication, the page number should be provided in the author-date citation. Complete source information must be provided in the reference list or bibliography.

- 4.3 *Further reference*. Refer to *Chicago* chapter 4 for more complete information about rights and permissions and to *Chicago* chapters 14 and 15 for information about documentation. Also refer to section 16 of this guide.

5. PUNCTUATION

5.1 *Punctuation and fonts.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.2–6.

5.2 *Punctuation and quotation marks.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.9–11.

5.3 *Punctuation relative to parentheses or brackets.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.13, 6.53, and 6.70.

ELLIPSES

5.4 *Ellipses in quotations.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.15, 13.7 (item 3), and 13.48–56. *Chicago* 13.51 retains the period at the end of a sentence before ellipses indicating the omission of material.

5.5 *Ellipses in elided operations and relations.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.19–20. Ellipsis dots are vertically centered unless the multiplication dot is present, in which case they should be on the baseline.

COMMAS

5.6 *Series and serial commas.* Use a serial comma. Refer to *Chicago* 6.18–21.

5.7 *Introductory words and phrases.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.35–36.

5.8 *“Not” and “not only” phrases.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.40–41.

5.9 *Dates.* The preferred format is month-day-year (for example, December 10, 2015). Refer to *Chicago* 6.45. See also sections 9.15–18 of this guide.

5.10 *Questions.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.52.

5.11 *Mathematical expressions.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.18–19.

5.12 *Parenthetical source citations.* Refer to *Chicago* 15.22.

COLONS AND SEMICOLONS

- 5.13 *Capitalization after a colon.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.61.
- 5.14 *Common misuses of colons.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.65.
- 5.15 *Parenthetical source citations.* Refer to *Chicago* 15.22–23 and 15.29.

QUESTION MARKS

- 5.16 *Questions within a sentence.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.67 and 6.119. *Chicago* now adds a comma after titles that end in question marks (or exclamation points) if the grammar of the sentence would normally use a comma (*Chicago* 6.119).
- 5.17 *Indirect questions.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.68–69.

HYPHENS AND DASHES

- 5.18 *Automatic hyphenation.* Automatic hyphenation should be turned off during manuscript editing. Only hard hyphens (that is, hyphens in compound words) should appear in the manuscript. Refer to *Chicago* 2.12 and 7.43.
- 5.19 *Compound modifiers.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.77–85, especially the tables on pages 375–84. Also see **appendix F** of this guide. Spare hyphenation is preferred.
- 5.20 *Items of equal weight.* Use a hyphen to link items of equal weight (for example, mother-daughter dinner). Do not use an en dash.
- 5.21 *Em dash.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.82–87. Sentences should not contain more than one pair of em dashes, and consecutive sentences containing pairs of dashes should be avoided if possible. Use the Word character to create em dashes.
- 5.22 *En dash.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.78–81. Use the Word character to create en dashes. Use hyphens, not en dashes, to link items of equal weight.
- 5.23 *Minus signs.* Do not use a hyphen or an en dash. Either use a minus sign character, which can be found in Symbols or in Character Map (look in Programs, Accessories, System Tools), or instruct the typesetter to set a minus sign (for example, <<minus>>1.25). Refer to *Chicago* 6.81.

PARENTHESES AND BRACKETS

- 5.24 *Translations of terms.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.93.
- 5.25 *Parentheses within parentheses.* Use square brackets within parentheses. Refer to *Chicago* 6.95 and 6.99.
- 5.26 *Quoted material.* Parentheses surround an insertion made by the original writer. Square brackets surround an insertion made by someone other than the original writer. Refer to *Chicago* 6.97 and 13.58. See also *Chicago* 13.62–70.

- 5.27 *Mathematical expressions.* Refer to *Chicago* chapter 12, especially 12.26–35.
- 5.28 *Parenthetical source citations.* Refer to *Chicago* 15.21 and 15.24. *Chicago* 15.24 states that the date should immediately follow the author's name, even in possessive citations, for example, "as Tufte's (2011) excellent book..." In the source line of figures, maps, and tables, parentheses are unnecessary around the date in an author-date reference.

Examples

Source: De la Fuente 2015.

Sources: De la Fuente 2014; World Bank 2015.

SLASHES

- 5.29 *Alternatives.* Avoid using a slash to represent "and" or "or." Instead, use the word "and" or "or." For example, use "he or she" rather than "he/she." Also, avoid using "and/or" unless rephrasing would make the sentence awkward.
- 5.30 *Years.* Use a slash to indicate the last part of one year and the first part of the next (for example, 2003/04). The total time period should not exceed one year. A fiscal year is a common example. Refer to *Chicago* 6.105, and use "2001/02" rather than "2001/2."
- 5.31 *Signifying "per."* In text, avoid using a slash to represent "per." For example, use "R\$500 per month" or "R\$500 a month" rather than "R\$500/month." However, it is acceptable to use the slash in figures and tables to represent "per."

LISTS

- 5.32 *Run-in lists.* Either numerals or letters may be used, but be consistent. Refer to *Chicago* 6.123.
- 5.33 *Vertical lists.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.124–126. For bulleted lists, see the examples that follow.
- 5.34 *Use a numbered list only when a sequence is being shown.* Start each bulleted entry with a capital letter.

Examples

Example of a bulleted list with incomplete sentences:

A range of direct and indirect measures is aimed at protecting the domestic pharmaceutical industry, including the following:

- Direct subsidies, loans, or tax breaks for modernization investments
- Import restrictions or import duties for competitor products
- Preferential treatment in public procurement
- Preference in regulatory approvals
- Preferential treatment in pricing decisions
- Reluctance to enforce strict quality standards
- Subsidies for mergers of foreign investors into domestic companies

Example of a bulleted list with complete sentences:

Following are important questions to ask:

- Which segment of the market needs to be analyzed (drugs in the public sector, reimbursed drugs, drugs for chronic conditions)?
- Whose costs are to be analyzed (costs to the end consumer, to a public payer, to both)?
- Which elements of the price should be assessed (ex-factory price; import, wholesale, and distribution margins; retail margins; taxes and regulatory costs)?

Example of a bulleted list with introductory phrases followed by complete sentences:

The success of Lotus's project in reducing stigma and discrimination toward and among MSM and transgender persons comes from the confluence of several key factors:

- *Staff commitment.* Lotus staff and cultural team members exhibited extraordinary determination, courage, and dedication in addressing sensitive issues in the public forum of theater. The power of the collective voice and the safety net of a close-knit group to support and care for the members have proved critical to the success of this process.
- *Theater as a medium for change.* Theater creates a unique space to address sensitive and taboo topics that could not otherwise be discussed publicly in a mixed forum of women and men and across generations. Furthermore, in putting these issues out in the open, plays create a new space for discussion and action.
- *Carefully targeted messaging.* Skillful communication, careful crafting of messages, and clever use of street theater were all keys to the project's success. The play was simultaneously entertaining and educational. It held the audience's attention and appealed to people's emotions and better instincts.

Less frequently used is the bulleted list punctuated as a continuous sentence. See Chicago 6.125.

Example of a bulleted list punctuated as a continuous sentence

The Community Innovation Survey provides a very rich data set. Examples of indicators that can be constructed include the share of firms that are

- Introducing a good or service new to the firm, new to the market, new to the world;
- Applying for a patent;
- Reporting important impacts of innovation (improved products, increased range of products, expanded markets); and
- Reporting effects of organizational innovation (improved products, reduced response time, reduced costs, improved employee satisfaction).

6. URLs, DOIs, AND E-MAIL ADDRESSES

6.1 *Punctuation.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.8 and 14.11.

6.2 *Line breaks.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.8, 6.77, 7.42, and 14.12. If it is necessary to break a uniform resource locator (URL) or digital object identifier (DOI) at the end of a line in a print publication, follow *Chicago* 14.12.

In manuscripts, do not insert a hard return to break a URL. Refer to *Chicago* 2.12.

6.3 *Access dates.* Some authors will provide the dates of access; most will not. Accessed dates should be kept when provided, but not queried when they are not provided. The inconsistency is acceptable in this instance.

6.4 *Full address.* Always include the protocol, for example, `http://` or `https://`, in URLs. Refer to *Chicago* 14.11.

6.5 *DOI and URLs in source information.* *Chicago* recommends the addition of a DOI or URL in the source information of an electronic publication. Refer to *Chicago* 15.4.

As unique and permanent identifiers of material, DOIs are preferred to URLs in source information, when available. Refer to *Chicago* 14.6.

In the text, “DOI” is uppercased; in source lines and in references, it is lowercased and followed immediately by a colon without a space. Refer to *Chicago* 15.9.

7. WORD TREATMENT

7.1 *Further reference.* For additional information, refer to *Chicago* chapters 7 and 8. See also **appendixes F and G** of this guide.

NAMES

The World Bank Group

7.2 *The World Bank and the World Bank Group*

The organizations that constitute the World Bank are as follows:

- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)
- International Development Association (IDA)

The organizations that constitute the World Bank Group are as follows:

- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)
- International Development Association (IDA)
- International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes (ICSID)
- International Finance Corporation (IFC)
- Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (MIGA)

These organizations may be referred to as *institutions* but not as *agencies*.

Do not use “the” preceding IFC and MIGA.

Unless the context specifically distinguishes between these entities, use simply the *World Bank*.

7.3 *Global practices and cross-cutting solutions areas*

The 14 Global Practices (GPs) and five cross-cutting solutions areas (CCSAs) coordinate with the regional vice presidencies and country management teams to connect global and local expertise to better serve our clients.

Global practices

Agriculture
Education
Energy and Extractives
Environment and Natural Resources
Finance and Markets
Governance
Health, Nutrition, and Population
Macroeconomics and Fiscal Management
Poverty
Social Protection and Labor
Trade and Competitiveness
Transport and ICT
Social, Urban, Rural, and Resilience
Water

CCSAs

Climate Change
Fragility, Conflict, and Violence
Gender
Jobs
Public-Private Partnerships (PPP)

Following first mention, each global practice or CCSA may be referred to as *the Group*.

7.4 *Regions.*

The World Bank's regional vice presidencies, referred to as *Regions*, are as follows. The abbreviations have been provided for reference, but their use should be avoided.

Regional vice presidencies

Africa or Sub-Saharan Africa (AFR or SSA)
East Asia and Pacific (EAP)
Europe and Central Asia (ECA)
Latin America and the Caribbean (LAC)
Middle East and North Africa (MNA or MENA)
South Asia (SAR)

IFC's Regions are as follows:

East Asia and Pacific (EAP)
Europe and Central Asia (ECA)
Latin America and the Caribbean (LAC)
Middle East and North Africa (MENA)
IFC's MENA includes Afghanistan and Pakistan
South Asia (SA)
Sub-Saharan Africa (SSA)

7.5 *Capitalization of unit names.* The terms *vice presidency* or *vice presidential unit*, *department*, and *unit* should always be capitalized when they follow the full name of the unit. When used alone, they should be lowercased.

Examples: Capitalization of unit names

The Publishing and Knowledge Division is part of the External and Corporate Relations Vice Presidency.

The vice presidency plays an active role in all the World Bank's activities.

So that it is not confused with a geographic region, the term *Region* should always be capitalized when it refers to an organizational unit within the World Bank. It is often necessary to query the author to determine whether capitalization is needed.

Examples: Organizational unit

The World Bank's Europe and Central Asia Region is focusing activities on a number of global priorities.

The Region has designated a first set of eight countries to be the focus of an initial set of actions to be taken to meet the MDGs.

Examples: Geographic region

The economic downturn in the Middle East and North Africa region deepened in calendar year 2015. Economic growth for the region fell from 3.2 percent to 3.1 percent.

- 7.6 *Initiatives, loans, programs, projects, and strategies.* The names of general types of initiatives, loans, programs, projects, and strategies should be lowercased. The names of specific initiatives, loans, programs, projects, and strategies should be capitalized. Do not use italics or boldface. The terms *initiative*, *loan*, *program*, *project*, and *strategy* should be capitalized when they follow the title but should be lowercased when used alone.

Examples

The World Bank's lending program in Afghanistan was revived in fiscal 2015 by the approval of Afghanistan's Emergency Transport Rehabilitation Project.

In Mongolia, a legal reform project is supporting the establishment of an administrative court system.

The World Bank supports the Education for All Fast-Track Initiative. The initiative has raised the profile of education, strengthened government commitment, and focused on outcomes.

Refer to **appendix F** of this guide. Also refer to the World Bank's projects database, <http://www.worldbank.org/projects>, and the International Monetary Fund's (IMF) terminology glossary, <http://www.imf.org/external/np/term/eng/>.

- 7.7 *Other institutional names.* Refer to **appendix F** of this guide.

Organizations Other Than the World Bank

- 7.8 *Spelling.* The names of other organizations should be spelled as each organization would spell it.

Example

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development should not be changed to *Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development*.

- 7.9 *Names in foreign languages.* Names of organizations in foreign languages should be set in roman type and capitalized according to the conventions of the country concerned. If the organization's name is widely known in the original language, a translation is not necessary. However, if a translation would be meaningful and is available, it should be provided in parentheses (along with the organizational abbreviation, when applicable).

Example

Ministerio de Educación y Cultura (Ministry of Education and Culture; MEC)

Alternatively, the English translation may be used followed by the foreign-language name in parentheses. The order chosen should be applied consistently throughout the manuscript.

After a name has been introduced, the abbreviation should be used in subsequent instances. If there is no abbreviation, either the English translation or the foreign-language name may be used, but the choice should be applied consistently.

Original and transliterated organizational names are not italicized (*Chicago* 11.8).

- 7.10 *Initiatives, loans, programs, projects, and strategies.* Refer to section 7.6 of this guide.

Personal Names

- 7.11 *Professional titles.* Professional titles within the text of the book should be treated consistently with *Chicago* 8.18–32. Within the acknowledgments section, titles may be treated according to either *Chicago* 8.18 or 8.19, depending on the client's preference.

Place Names

- 7.12 *Regional names.* Be careful not to confuse geographic regions with the World Bank's regional vice presidential units listed in section 7.4. Often the geographic region being discussed has the same name as a World Bank vice presidential unit, but not always.

Any defined subset of countries (for example, Southeast Asia, Central Europe, North Africa) should be capitalized. Terms that indicate a general, undefined location should be lowercased.

Examples

Gross domestic product in Latin America and the Caribbean contracted by 0.8 percent in 2015.

In Latin America, the failure of significant currency depreciations to spark inflation is striking.

The economies of Eastern Europe and Central Asia turned in solid growth performances during 2015.

Considering the weakness in Western Europe, the transition group weathered the slowdown fairly well.

The term *region* should always be lowercased when it refers to a geographic region. World Bank vice presidential unit abbreviations should not be used to represent geographic regions. If space is tight in figures and tables, the shortened versions indicated below may be used. However, it is preferable to use the full version if at all possible.

Africa
E. Asia & Pacific
E. Eur. & Cent. Asia
L. Amer. & the Caribbean
Mid. East & N. Africa
S. Asia

Refer to *Chicago* 8.46 for information about regions.

- 7.13 *Country and economy names.* Country and economy names must be consistent with the list of country and economy names provided by the World Bank's Corporate Secretariat. Refer to **appendix C** of this guide for a complete list. Consult the production editor if a name does not appear on the list.

When the shortening of a name is allowed, the full name should be used on first mention either in the book or in each chapter, depending on the production editor's instructions. The shortened version may be used thereafter. The abbreviation *Rep.* should be used only in tables and figures, never in text.

- 7.14 *Other place names.* Refer to *Chicago* 8.43–58.

Brand Names

- 7.15 *Brand names and trademarks.* Refer to *Chicago* 8.152–153. Trademark symbols should be omitted from running text.

Titles of Works

ENGLISH-LANGUAGE PRINT PUBLICATIONS

- 7.16 *Capitalization.* Use headline-style capitalization. Capitalize all nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. Lowercase most prepositions. Refer to *Chicago* 8.157–159.
- 7.17 *Titles of formally published freestanding publications.* Titles of formally published freestanding publications, such as books and journals, are italicized.

Refer to *Chicago* 8.161. Italicize only the official name of a periodical. Added descriptive terms are lowercased and set in roman type. Refer to *Chicago* 8.169–171. Do not use the title of a work to stand for the subject of a work. Refer to *Chicago* 8.172.

7.18 *Subtitles*. In running text or in a bibliography, a colon separates the title from the subtitle. The subtitle receives the same treatment as the title; that is, if the title is italicized, then the subtitle is also italicized. Refer to *Chicago* 8.162.

If there are two subtitles, a semicolon separates the first subtitle from the second subtitle. Refer to *Chicago* 14.98.

7.19 *Titles of individual selections within freestanding publications*. Titles of articles, feature stories, chapters, essays, and the like are set in roman and enclosed in quotation marks. Refer to *Chicago* 8.161 and 8.175.

7.20 *Changes to titles*. Generally, original spelling, hyphenation, and punctuation should be preserved. Refer to *Chicago* 8.163. However, certain changes to punctuation and capitalization are permissible. Refer to *Chicago* 8.163–164.

7.21 *Shortened titles*. Refer to *Chicago* 8.166–167 and 14.28.

7.22 *Periodicals*. In the text, “the” is lowercased and set in roman type even if it is part of the official title. Refer to *Chicago* 8.168.

For U.S. and Canadian newspaper titles, a city name may be added and italicized along with the official title, with the state or province provided in parentheses if needed. A city name is not added for well-known national newspapers. Refer to *Chicago* 14.210; see *Chicago* 14.211 for treatment of names outside of the United States and Canada.

7.23 *Unpublished or informally published works*. Titles of unpublished or informally published works use headline-style capitalization, are set in roman type, and are enclosed in quotation marks. The title of a forthcoming book may be italicized, but in running text, place *forthcoming* in parentheses following the title. In the reference list, place *forthcoming* where the date would normally appear. In text citations, *forthcoming* is preceded by a comma. Refer to *Chicago* 8.184, 14.153, and 15.42.

Examples

Smith’s book, *The New Economy* (forthcoming), discusses this topic.

Smith, John. Forthcoming. *The New Economy*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

For more information, consult Smith (forthcoming).

(Smith, forthcoming).

7.24 *Public documents*. Generally, public documents use headline-style capitalization and are italicized. For legal documents, *Chicago* has adopted *The Bluebook: A Uniform System of Citation*, with the *ALWD Citation Manual: A Professional System of Citation* as an alternative. Refer to *Chicago* 14.281–317 and 15.54–55.

ENGLISH-LANGUAGE ELECTRONIC PUBLICATIONS

7.25 *Electronic publications analogous to print publications.* Regardless of whether they have been printed, periodicals or complete works use headline-style capitalization and are italicized; articles or sections of works use headline-style capitalization, are set in roman type, and are enclosed in quotation marks. Refer to *Chicago* 8.186.

7.26 *Databases.* Database titles use headline-style capitalization and are set in roman type without quotation marks. Refer to *Chicago* 14.271–272.

7.27 *Websites, web pages, and blogs.* Titles of websites use headline-style capitalization and are set in roman type without quotation marks. Titles of web pages within a site use headline-style capitalization, are set in roman type, and are enclosed in quotation marks.

Blogs are treated like journals: their titles are italicized, and blog entries, like journal articles, are enclosed in quotation marks. Refer to *Chicago* 8.186–187 and 14.243–246.

FOREIGN-LANGUAGE PUBLICATIONS

7.28 *Capitalization of foreign-language titles.* Use sentence-style capitalization. Refer to *Chicago* 11.3. However, exceptions are made according to the conventions of the foreign language. For example, German capitalizes common nouns in both running text and titles. See *Chicago* 11.42 and 14.193.

7.29 *Punctuation.* A period or semicolon between title and subtitle may be changed to a colon, and guillemets may be changed to quotation marks. No other punctuation changes should be made. Refer to *Chicago* 11.4.

7.30 *Italic versus roman type.* Titles that use the Latin alphabet (including transliterated titles) are set in italic or roman type in accordance with the principles for English-language publications. Refer to *Chicago* 11.5.

7.31 *Foreign-language titles with English translations.* When an English translation follows a foreign-language title, it is placed in parentheses. If the translation has been published, the title uses headline-style capitalization and is italicized. If the translation has not been published, the title uses sentence-style capitalization and is not italicized. Refer to *Chicago* 11.6.

In reference lists, English translations are enclosed in brackets rather than parentheses. Refer to *Chicago* 14.108.

7.32 *Periodicals.* In foreign-language titles, an initial article is capitalized and treated like the rest of the title if it is part of the official title. Refer to *Chicago* 8.168.

If the city name of a foreign newspaper is not part of the official title, it is added in parentheses after the title. It is not italicized. Refer to *Chicago* 14.211.

TERMS

7.33 *World Bank terms.* Refer to **appendix F** of this guide.

- 7.34 *Computer-related terms.* Following is a list of commonly used computer-related terms:
e-mail, Internet, intranet, listserver, online, web page, website.
- 7.35 *URLs and DOIs.* The protocol (for example, *http*, *https*, or *ftp*) should be included at the start of a URL, followed by a colon and double slash. The lowercase letters *doi*, followed by a colon, precede a DOI. Refer to *Chicago* 14.11 and section 6.5 of this guide for more information.
- 7.36 *Medical terms.* Refer to *Chicago* 8.142–145.
- 7.37 *Compounds.* Follow traditional rules for capitalizing hyphenated terms. Refer to *Chicago* 8.159. *Chicago* now capitalizes the second word in a hyphenated number, for example, “Twenty-One.”
Common World Bank compounds are included in **appendix F** of this guide. Refer to the dictionary and *Chicago* 5.91, 6.76, 6.80, and 7.77–85 for complete information about compounds and hyphenation. *Chicago* 7.85 includes a table of compounds.
- 7.38 *Terms in foreign languages.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.49–53 and, for more detail, *Chicago* chapter 11.
- 7.39 *Translations of foreign-language terms.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.50.
- 7.40 *Transliterations.* Refer to *Chicago* 11.95.

WORD DIVISION

- 7.41 *Primary reference.* The primary reference for word division is *Merriam-Webster’s Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition.
- 7.42 *Proper nouns and personal names.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.38.
- 7.43 *Numerals.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.39.
- 7.44 *Numerals with abbreviated units of measure.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.40.
- 7.45 *Run-in lists.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.41.
- 7.46 *URLs and e-mail addresses.* Refer to *Chicago* 7.42 and 14.12 for revised rules for line breaks. See also *Chicago* 6.8 and 6.77.
- 7.47 *Mathematical expressions.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.23.
- 7.48 *Hyphenation and appearance.* Avoid an abundance of hyphenated lines on one page. Allow no more than three hyphenated lines in succession. Refer to *Chicago* 7.43.
- 7.49 *Automatic hyphenation.* Turn off automatic hyphenation during manuscript editing. Only hard hyphens (that is, hyphens in compound words) should appear in the manuscript. Refer to *Chicago* 2.12 and 7.43.

8. ABBREVIATIONS

- 8.1 *Further reference.* For additional information, refer to *Chicago* chapter 10, especially 10.2. For abbreviations that commonly appear in World Bank publications, see **appendix E** of this guide.
- 8.2 *When to use abbreviations.* Spell out all abbreviations at the first occurrence in each chapter, followed by the abbreviation in parentheses. In instances in which the abbreviation has become so widely known and used that the full term has essentially ceased to be used, the abbreviation does not need to be written out. Indicate such abbreviations on the style sheet for the project. For the reader's sake, eliminate clusters of abbreviations and do not use abbreviations unnecessarily.
- 8.3 *World Bank regional vice presidencies.* The abbreviations listed below frequently appear in World Bank manuscripts. To the extent possible, avoid using these abbreviations.

AFR or SSA	Africa or Sub-Saharan Africa
EAP	East Asia and Pacific
ECA	Europe and Central Asia
LAC	Latin America and the Caribbean
MNA or MENA	Middle East and North Africa
SAR	South Asia

These abbreviations should not be used to represent geographic regions.

- 8.4 *Geographic regions.* Refer to section 7.12 of this guide.
- 8.5 *Country names.* Refer to **appendix C** of this guide. For the United States and the United Kingdom, the abbreviations "U.S." and "U.K." are permissible when used as adjectives in running text. As nouns, the names should be written out. They should also be written out in tables and figures unless space is a problem.

- 8.6 *U.S. states.* Use U.S. Postal Service abbreviations. However, state names should always be written out in running text. Refer to *Chicago* 10.28.
- 8.7 *“The” preceding an abbreviation.* Acronyms (which are read as words) usually are not preceded by *the*; initialisms, which are not pronounced as words, generally are preceded by *the*. Refer to *Chicago* 10.9.
- 8.8 *Capitals versus lowercase.* Refer to *Chicago* 10.6 and 10.24. *Chicago* prefers the use of capitals in abbreviations, including acronyms (for example, DANIDA, not Danida).
- 8.9 The following types of entities should be treated consistently: EU-10 and G-20, not EU10, EU 10, G 20, or G20.

9. NUMBERS AND MEASUREMENTS

9.1 *Numerals versus words.* Use numerals for the following:

- Double-digit whole numbers (10 and above), both cardinals and ordinals; refer to *Chicago* 9.3
- Numbers that are part of a larger number (in the millions or more; for example, 4 million)
- Physical quantities (for example, 6 kilometers; 8 ounces); also see sections 9.7 and 9.8 of this guide
- Percentages (for example, 8 percent) and decimal fractions (for example, 0.89); refer to *Chicago* 9.18–19; also see sections 9.9–10 of this guide
- Ratios (for example, a male-female ratio of 6 to 10); also see section 9.11 of this guide
- Statistical expressions (for example, 6 deaths per 1,000 live births)
- Monetary amounts when accompanied by a currency symbol (for example, US\$1 a day); see also sections 9.12–14 and **appendix D** of this guide
- Decades (for example, the 1990s); the year alone (for example, 2013); and the day of the month (for example, May 5, 2015); refer to *Chicago* 9.30, 9.32, 9.34, and 9.36; also see sections 9.15–18 of this guide
- Parts of a book (for example, chapter 3); refer to *Chicago* 9.27; see *Chicago* 9.28–29 for periodicals and legal instruments

9.2 *Numbers at the beginning of a sentence.* Refer to *Chicago* 9.5.

9.3 *Consistency and flexibility.* Refer to *Chicago* 9.7.

PUNCTUATION AND INCLUSIVE NUMBERS

- 9.4 *Commas*. Use commas in numbers greater than 999 (for example, “1,525”). Refer to *Chicago* 9.55.
- 9.5 *En dashes*. Refer to *Chicago* 9.58–59.
- 9.6 *Abbreviating inclusive numbers*. Refer to *Chicago* 9.60 and 9.62. For years, however, see sections 9.15–18 of this guide.

PHYSICAL QUANTITIES

- 9.7 *Abbreviations*. Abbreviate units (for example, “km” for kilometers) in tables and figures. Write them out in running text unless their frequency creates awkwardness, in which case use abbreviations.
- 9.8 *Simple fractions*. Refer to *Chicago* 9.14–15.

PERCENTAGES, DECIMAL FRACTIONS, AND RATIOS

- 9.9 *Percentages*. Write out *percent* in running text. The symbol may be used in figures and tables (refer to sections 13 and 14 of this guide for more information about figures and tables, respectively). Note that *percent* and *percentage* are not interchangeable. Refer to **appendix F** of this guide.
- 9.10 *Decimal fractions*. Numbers that are to be compared should have the same number of decimal places. If they do not, query the author. Numbers less than one should be preceded by a zero (for example, 0.25) unless they are probabilities or correlation coefficients. Refer to *Chicago* 9.19.
- 9.11 *Ratios*. Make sure the verbal and numerical expressions of a ratio are parallel in construction (for example, a teacher-student ratio of 1 to 30, *not* a teacher-student ratio of 30 to 1).

MONEY

- 9.12 *Billions*. The British billion is different from the American billion. Unless the manuscript uses only U.S. dollars, insert a note at the first mention (*a billion is 1,000 million*) and query the author to verify that this is what is meant. Refer to *Chicago* 5.220 (under *billion*; *trillion* on page 270) and 9.8.
- 9.13 *U.S. dollars and currency symbols*. If the manuscript mostly uses U.S. dollars, insert the following note at the foot of the list of abbreviations (or wherever the production editor specifies): *All dollar amounts are U.S. dollars unless otherwise indicated*. In figures and tables, use a comma to separate the unit from the currency, for example, “US\$, millions” or “US\$, billions.”

If a variety of currencies is used in the manuscript, the appropriate currency symbol should always precede the number. See section 9.14 and **appendix D** of this guide. See also *Chicago* 9.22–26.

9.14 *Other currencies.*

If the manuscript mostly uses one type of currency, insert the following note at the foot of the list of abbreviations (or wherever the production editor specifies): *All monetary amounts are [currency type] unless otherwise indicated.* Brackets indicate text to be supplied.

When currency unit abbreviations are used with monetary amounts, leave a space between the abbreviation and the amount.

Examples

Afghani	Af 0.01
Swiss franc	Sw F 4,000
Indian rupee	Rs 10 billion

When currency symbols are used, no space is used between the symbol and the amount.

Examples

Japanese yen	¥0.01
Nigerian naira	₦100
Paraguayan guaraní	₲1 million

When the currency unit is used alone, it should be written out in full and preceded by the country name. The country name need not be repeated after the first instance if it is clear from the context (for example, in a book dealing with only one country).

Examples

Bangladesh taka
Costa Rican colones
Salvadoran colones

Refer to **appendix D** of this guide for a list of currency units.

DATES

9.15 *Specific dates.* The preferred format is month-day-year (for example, December 10, 2015).

9.16 *Specific decades.* Use four-digit years (for example, *the 1990s* rather than *the nineties* or *the '90s*).

9.17 *Ranges of years.* Use an en dash and two digits for the second year for a range of years. Refer to *Chicago* 6.78. Inclusive numbers are abbreviated according

to *Chicago* 9.60, but these rules are modified slightly for years as the following examples demonstrate.

Examples

1998–99
1995–2005
2001–03
2008–12
2014–16

- 9.18 *Fiscal years.* Use a slash to indicate the last part of one year and the first part of the next (for example, 2009/09, 2012/13). The total time frame must not exceed 12 months.

In text, use *fiscal* (for example, fiscal 2010). In tables and figures, *FY* can be used (for example, FY2015 or FY15), but choose a consistent style.

10. QUOTATIONS

10.1 *Credit and permissions.* Refer to *Chicago* chapter 4 and 13.3, and section 4 of this guide.

10.2 *Source citations.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.62–68.

10.3 *Permissible changes.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.7–8.

TREATMENT

10.4 *Run in or set off.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.10.

10.5 *Initial capital or lowercase letter.* It is permissible to change the initial letter to capital or lowercase. Refer to *Chicago* 13.7 and 13.14–15.

10.6 *Paragraphing.* Set the opening line of a block quotation flush left. Indent the first line of subsequent paragraphs in the quotation. Refer to *Chicago* 13.20–22.

10.7 *Foreign-language quotations.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.71–79.

PUNCTUATION

10.8 *Quotation marks.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.28–36. Double quotation marks are used first, then single. Refer also to *Chicago* 6.11.

10.9 *Punctuation with quotation marks.* Refer to *Chicago* 6.9 and 6.10.

10.10 *Ellipses.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.48–54.

10.11 *Parentheses and brackets.* Parentheses surround an insertion made by the original writer. Square brackets surround an insertion made by someone other than the original writer. Refer to *Chicago* 6.97 and 13.58. See also *Chicago* 13.62–70.

10.12 *Introductory phrases.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.17–19.

10.13 *Missing material.* Refer to *Chicago* 13.57–58.

11. TEXT HEADINGS

- 11.1 *Heading levels.* Preferably, no more than four heading levels should be used, including chapter titles. The manuscript editor should code the heading levels using the Microsoft Word Formatting Instructions in **appendix A.3** in this guide or, at the discretion of the production editor, may insert bold and angle brackets. For example, insert <<**A**>> next to an A-level heading.
- 11.2 *Stacked heads.* Stacked heads should be avoided whenever possible. If authors do not provide text to separate heads, then stacked heads are permissible. No queries for authors to provide new text are needed.
- 11.3 *Numbering.* In general, headings should not be numbered. However, numbering may make sense for some publications, such as handbooks. The production editor will provide direction.
- 11.4 *Content.* Headings should be brief and parallel in structure and tone. Repetition of words and phrases should be avoided. For example, in a book titled *Health Care in India*, the chapter title “History of Health Care in India” followed by the headings “The Indian Health Care System” and “Development of the Health Care System” might not be preferable.
- Headings should be self-contained. Ellipses or dashes should not be used to connect one heading to the next.
- 11.5 *Abbreviations.* Previously defined abbreviations may be used in headings. However, abbreviations should not be introduced in headings.
- 11.6 *Format.* Headline-style capitalization is usually, but not always, used. The series template can be used or, for a standalone product, the production editor’s instructions. *Chicago* 8.157 provides guidance on headline-style capitalization.
- For hyphenated terms, follow *Chicago* 8.159. Note that *Chicago* capitalizes both elements for hyphenated spelled-out numbers in titles, for example, *Twenty-First*.

12. TEXT BOXES

- 12.1 *Text references.* All text boxes should be referenced individually by number within the text.
- 12.2 *Length.* Text boxes should be no more than 700 words in length. Using a sample publication provided by the production editor, the manuscript editor should assess the likelihood of a text box running too long. When it appears that a text box will be too long, the manuscript editor should insert an author query requesting that the text be shortened.
- 12.3 *Numbering.* Boxes are numbered separately from figures and tables. Double numeration is typically used, for example, box 1.1. The following are special treatments:
- **Overview boxes:** Boxes in an overview use the two-digit convention with the letter “O,” for example, box O.1 for the first box in an overview.
 - **Annex boxes:** Boxes in a chapter annex have the annex letter inserted after the chapter number (for example, box 3A.1 is the first box in the first annex to chapter 3).
 - **Appendix boxes:** Boxes in an appendix use the appendix letter in place of the chapter number (for example, box B.3 is the third box in appendix B).
- 12.4 *Titles.* Titles should be descriptive, should be parallel in structure, and should use headline-style capitalization, unless the series template specifies otherwise. Refer to *Chicago* 8.157–159 for information about headline-style capitalization.
- 12.5 *Graphics.* Every figure, map, or table within a box should have a number and text title. In a text box, number any figures and tables according to the following example: Figure B2.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the figure is in a box, “2.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2.1.

If a figure in a box comprises multiple panels, and these panels are referenced in the text, they should be referred to as “panel a,” “panel b,” and so forth. Each panel within the figure should be given a subtitle that includes a letter (for example, “a,” “b”), followed by a descriptive heading.

Figures in a box in an annex should be numbered according to the following example: Figure B2A.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the figure is in a box, “2A.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in annex 2A, the first annex of chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2A.1.

- 12.6 *Notes.* Notes within text boxes must be completely self-contained to avoid confusion with notes in the text. Superscript lowercase letters, not numbers, are used within the text of the box. The notes section should be placed at the end of the box and should use full-size lowercase letters, not raised, followed by a period.
- 12.7 *Sources.* The author-date method of citing sources is preferred. Complete bibliographic information should be provided in the reference list for the chapter or book as a whole; it does not need to be included in the text box. A source citation is not needed for original content.
- 12.8 *Placement.* Boxes requiring two pages are preferably set on facing pages (a verso-recto spread). The placement of figures and tables takes priority over that of boxes.

13. FIGURES AND MAPS

- 13.1 *Further reference.* For additional information, refer to *Chicago* chapter 3. Also, see the figure editing checklist provided in section 13.27 and the edited samples provided in section 13.28 of this guide.
- 13.2 *Text references.* All figures and maps should be referenced individually within the text. Either of the following forms is acceptable:
- “Vertical trade in low- and middle-income countries increased from 8 percent in 2005 to around 33 percent in 2015 (figure 2.1).”
 - “As figure 2.1 shows, vertical trade in low- and middle-income countries increased from 8 percent in 2005 to around 33 percent in 2015.”
- 13.3 *Numbering.* Every figure and map should have a number. Figures are numbered separately from boxes and tables unless they appear within a box. Double numeration is typically used (for example, figure 1.1), and the number is placed above the figure in all cases. The following are special treatments:
- **Box figures:** Assign a number and title to every figure within a box. In the text box, number any figures according to the following example for the first figure in box 2.1: Figure B2.1.1.
 - **Overview figures:** Figures in an overview use the two-digit convention with the letter “O,” for example, figure O.1 for the first figure in an overview.
 - **Annex figures:** Figures in a chapter annex have the annex letter inserted after the chapter number (for example, figure 3A.1 is the first figure in the first annex to chapter 3).
 - **Appendix figures:** Figures in an appendix use the appendix letter in place of the chapter number (for example, figure B.3 is the third figure in appendix B).

TITLES

- 13.4 *Placement and format.* Every figure should have a title. Figures may be viewed electronically apart from their respective chapters and should be electronically searchable. The title should appear in both the Word file of the manuscript and any corresponding data file, such as Excel or Stata.

Figure titles are placed above the figure, following the figure number. They should use headline-style capitalization (refer to *Chicago* 8.157–159) unless the series template specifies otherwise.

- 13.5 *Content.* Titles should be descriptive, covering “What,” “Where,” and “When.” They should not include background information or describe results illustrated by the figure. Ellipses or dashes should not be used to connect one figure title to the next.

Geographic areas and dates, if relevant, should be placed at the end of the title. Use judgment in determining whether this information is needed. For example, the country name likely is not needed in a book that focuses entirely on one country.

Abbreviations within the title are acceptable, but avoid using the World Bank’s regional abbreviations (AFR or SSA, EAP, ECA, LAC, MNA or MENA, and SAR).

- 13.6 *Subparts.* When a figure contains multiple charts, each chart should have a subpart title and corresponding letter, for example, “a. Infant mortality rates, 2015.” In the text, these charts are referred to as panels: “see figure 3.4, panel a,” or “panel b of figure 2.3.”

UNIT INDICATORS

- 13.7 Title each axis and provide unit indicators in the axis title; see 13.12–14 for specific instructions. For a figure that does not use axes, such as a pie chart, provide a unit indicator for the figure as a whole.
- 13.8 *Placement and format of the unit indicator for a figure without axes.* The unit indicator is placed below the title but above the figure. It is typically set flush left, in italics, and lowercased, but editors should defer to the series template.
- 13.9 *Content.* Abbreviations and symbols may be used, but avoid a single symbol standing alone (for example, %). Nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols should be defined in a general note in each figure. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined. The word *in* should not be used (for example, *R\$, millions*, not *in R\$ millions*).

COMPOSITION

- 13.10 *Consistency.* All like figures should be treated consistently.
- 13.11 *Axes.* Use a single-digit zero at the intersection of the x axes and y axes (that is, 0, not 0.00). To the extent possible, the axes should be at full scale to show data accurately. Unneeded zeroes should be deleted (for example, 3.0, 3.5, 4.0 rather than 3.00, 3.50, 4.00).

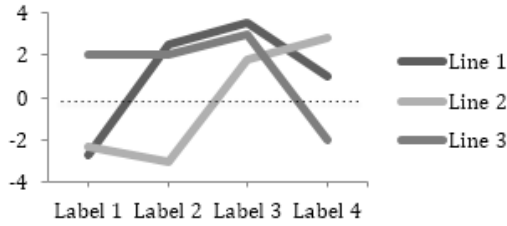
- 13.12 *Axis position when a graph shows negative numbers.* In a graph with negative numbers, a dashed or dotted line should be placed at zero; an axis with tick marks, labels, and axis title should be placed on the outside of the graph. “Outside the graph” for the x axis means at the base of the figure; for the y axis, it is at the left of the figure. Please see the accompanying graphs on page 43 for examples.
- 13.13 *Axis titles.* All axes must have titles with unit indicators. The titles should use sentence-style capitalization.
- 13.14 *Position of axis titles.* Y-axis titles are positioned parallel to the axis and are centered along its length. X-axis titles are centered below the axis, except when placed per section 13.12.
- 13.15 *X-axis labels.* X-axis labels may be positioned either horizontally or, when space is tight, on a slant. They should not be perpendicular to the x-axis.
- 13.16 *Gridlines and frames.* All gridlines, other than the axes, should be removed from the figure. It may be appropriate to leave a rule at 0 for clarity (when the figure includes negative data points). Figures should not be framed by a box unless frames are specified by the series template.
- 13.17 *Data lines.* Typically, data points should be removed from lines in a line graph. Color or line patterns should be used to differentiate the data lines from each other.
- 13.18 *Keys/legends and line labels.* The text in keys/legends and line labels should follow sentence-style capitalization. Abbreviations and symbols may be used in keys/legends and line labels, but avoid a single symbol standing alone (for example, %). Define nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols in a note. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined.
- 13.19 *Country and economy names and codes.* Country and economy names in figures should follow the World Bank listing provided in **appendix C** of this guide. If country and economy codes are used within the figure to identify data points, it is not necessary to provide a key or to refer readers to an online listing. Country and economy codes are listed in **appendix I** of this guide.
- 13.20 *Notes.* Superscript letters should be used for notes within the figure.

SOURCES

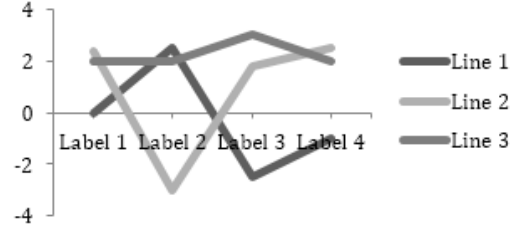
- 13.21 Sources for figures are now treated the same as sources for text. Content including data that is not original needs a source citation.
- Use author-date style to refer readers to a publication. However, note that parentheses are not used around the dates in source lines. Make sure that the full bibliographic information is included in the reference list at the end of each chapter.

A.

Example 1

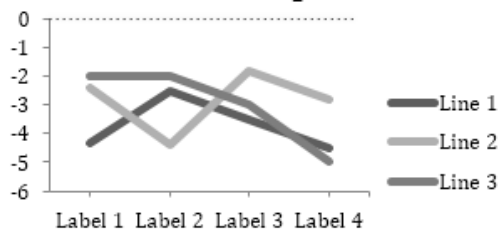


Example 2



B.

Example 3

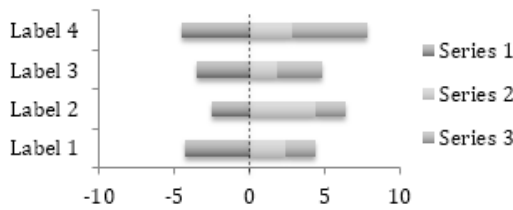


Example 4

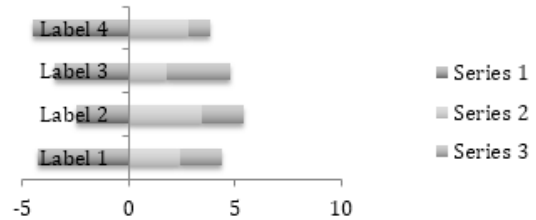


C.

Example 5

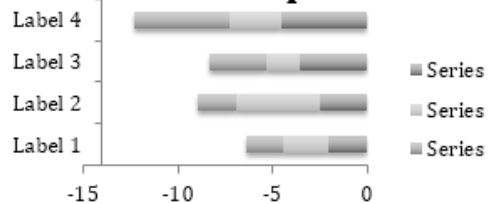


Example 6

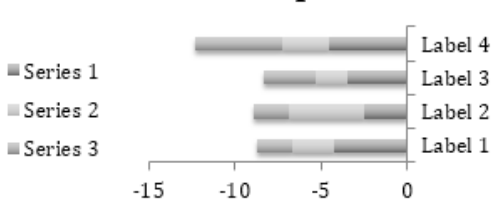


D.

Example 7



Example 8



Note: Add instructions to the typesetter to replace hyphens with proper minus signs.

- The World Bank Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.

Examples

If figures are original and use text and not data, then do not list a source because the publication itself is the original source.

If figures use World Bank data, then cite the data source as specifically as possible, for example, “World Development Indicators Database.” In the absence of this information, provide a note specifying “World Bank data” as the source. It is acceptable to start the source line with “An elaboration of ...” or “based on ...” or similar language.

If figures use non-Bank data owned by a third party, then use a standard source line.

If figures are (a) owned by a third party (not the World Bank) and (b) require permission, then use the following line: “Source: [author-date citation], ©[copyright owner]. Reproduced with permission, from [copyright owner]; further permission required for reuse.”

NOTES

13.22 *General note*. The word *Note*—always singular, in italics, with an initial cap, and followed by a colon—precedes the general note. Nonstandard abbreviations and symbols should be defined in the general note. If the figure uses country codes, it is not necessary to provide a key or to refer readers to an online listing.

13.23 *Order*. Follow the order for notes specified in *Chicago* 3.74.

- Source notes appear first.
- General notes (including definitions of nonstandard abbreviations and symbols) appear second.
- Specific (lettered) notes appear third.
- Notes on significance or probability levels appear last (*Chicago* 3.78).

Example

Sources: WHO 2015; World Bank 2012.

Note: Data refer to Eastern Europe and Central Asia. SNA = Survey of National Accounts; — = not available.

a. Data for Romania are for 2001–11.

* $p < .05$ ** $p < .01$

Or

Significance level: * = 10 percent, ** = 5 percent, *** = 1 percent.

13.24 *Specific notes.* Specific notes are preceded by full-size lowercase letters, they are not raised or superscript, and they are followed by a period. Reference letters within the figure are superscript.

MAPS

13.25 *Map numbering.* Maps should be referenced individually in the text and titled as “maps” rather than “figures.” Maps should be numbered separately from figures, using the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables. Every map should have a source line and corresponding text callout.

Written permission from the originator is needed for maps taken from copyrighted sources.

Maps should be organized as separate Illustrator/eps files by chapter, as well as low-resolution PDFs. The naming convention should include each map by number both in the file name and in the document.

Examples

```
Map 1_1.eps  
Map 1_2.eps  
Map 2_1.eps  
Map 2_2.eps  
Map A_1.eps
```

No maps should show the country of India, other than as part of the region or world. Individual province maps are acceptable; however, the provinces of Jammu Kashmir, Azad Jammu Kashmir, and Arunachal Pradesh should not be depicted. The three provinces also should not appear in tables, figures, or text. **Appendix H** of this guide provides guidance on the proper treatment of countries, territories, and special cases.

PHOTOGRAPHS

13.26 *For Category 3 publications only*

Photographs should be referenced individually in the text and titled as “photos.” Photographs should be numbered separately from other graphic elements, using the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables. Every photograph should have a source line and corresponding text callout.

CHECKLIST AND EXAMPLES FOR FIGURES

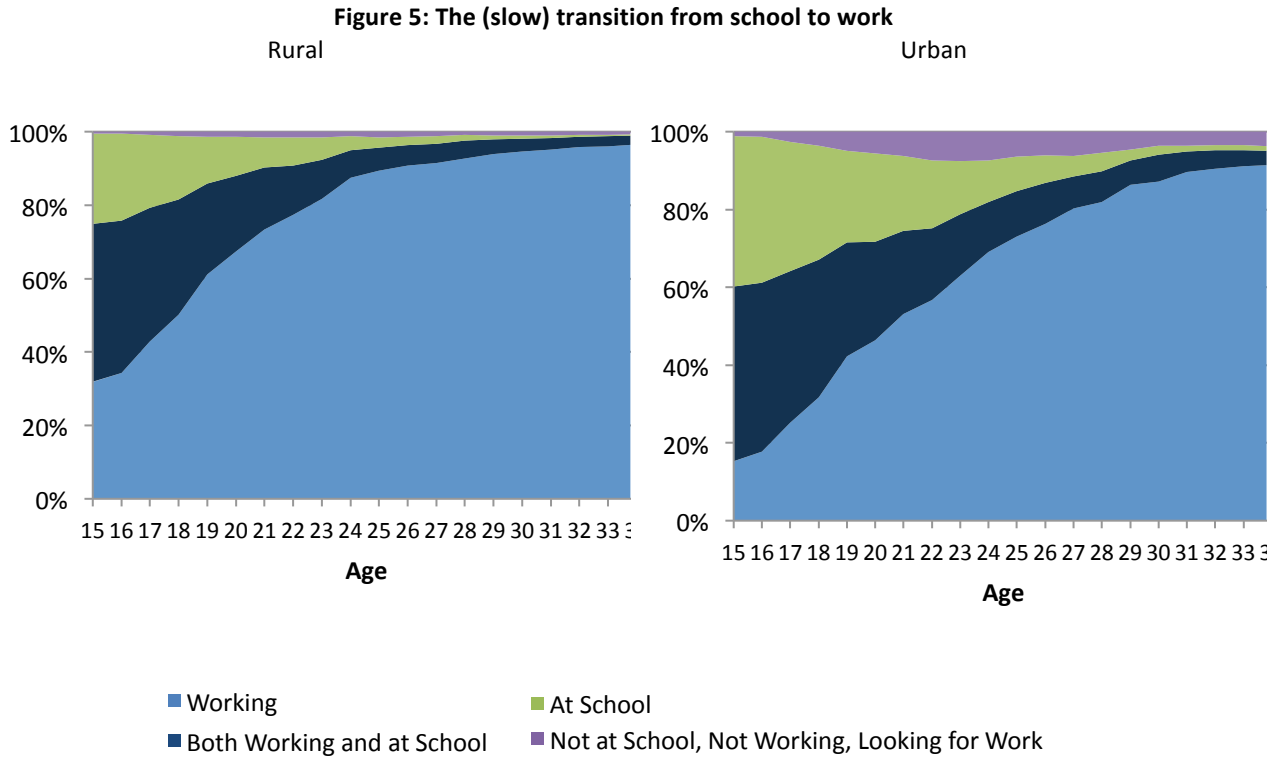
13.27 *Checklist for editing figures.* To ensure figures are consistent with World Bank style, refer to the following checklist.

CHECKLIST FOR EDITING WORLD BANK FIGURES

- ___ **Agreement with text:** Have you confirmed that the data in the text and in figures, maps, and tables agree?
 - ___ **Units:** Have you spelled out the units for both x and y axes?
 - ___ **Country and economy names:** Have you listed the country and economy names according to the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*, appendix C?
 - ___ **Legends:** Have you provided a legend or interior labels, if needed (and used consistent treatment throughout)?
 - ___ **Punctuation:** Have you used commas in four-digit numbers (for example, "3,280")?
 - ___ **Symbols:**
 - a. Have you instructed the typesetter to use the negative sign rather than a hyphen to precede a negative number?
 - b. Have you used or instructed the typesetter to use en-dashes for inclusive numbers and dates, for example, "2011–13"?
 - ___ **Decimals:** If there are decimals with two digits on an axis, have you checked that the whole numbers have a zero? For example, "0.3, 0.35, 0.4, 0.45" should be changed to "0.30, 0.35, 0.40, 0.45."
 - ___ **Consistency in style:**
 - a. Are the points the same shape for all figures (for example, dots vs. diamonds) in scatterplots?
 - b. Have you instructed the typesetter to remove unnecessary clutter like gridlines or a surround box?
 - c. Have you followed a consistent style for commas versus parentheses for unit breakdown, either "US\$, millions" or "US\$ (millions)"?
 - d. Have you followed a consistent treatment for months? For example, do "2012M1, 1/2012, 2012/M01, J 12, and Jan. 2012" all refer to the same thing?
 - e. Have you treated quintiles and quartiles consistently, for example, "Q1 2015," "quartile 1," or "first quartile" with an explanation in the note?
 - ___ **Subparts:** Have you added "a., b.," and text subheadings for subparts of figures?
 - ___ **Notes:** Have you used letters for specific notes in figures, which should be set separate from the general note?
-

13.28 *Examples of edited figures.* The preferred method of indicating revisions to figures is to insert queries to authors and instructions to the typesetter in the manuscript Word files. In some cases, the production editor may indicate that it is appropriate to mark and scan the hard copy.

Option 1



Source: Authors' analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys.

[[Typesetter:

Figure title: Change figure number to 6.5 and use headline style capitalization

Panel labels: Change them to “a. Rural” and “b. Urban”

Y-axes: Remove percent signs (%) and add axis title: “Percent”

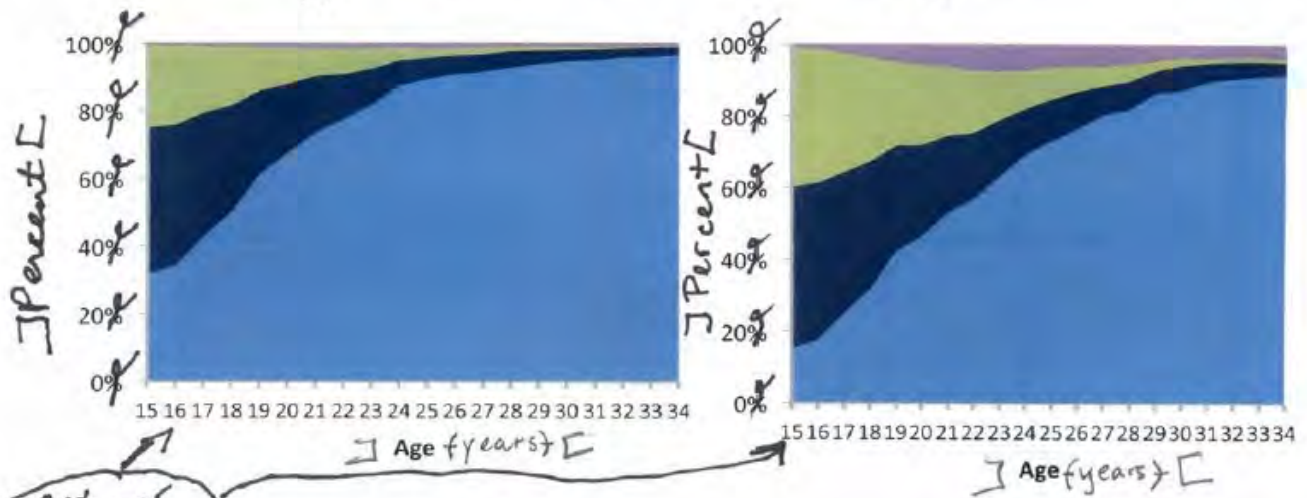
X-axes: Fix number spacing. If necessary, you can renumber the axis using only odd numbers. Change axis titles to “Age (years)”

Key: Use sentence-style capitalization

Source line: Change “Authors” to “World Bank”]]

Option 2

6. Figure 5: The (slow) transition from school to work
 a. Rural b. Urban



fix number spacing

- Working
- At School
- Both Working and at School
- Not at School, Not Working, Looking for Work

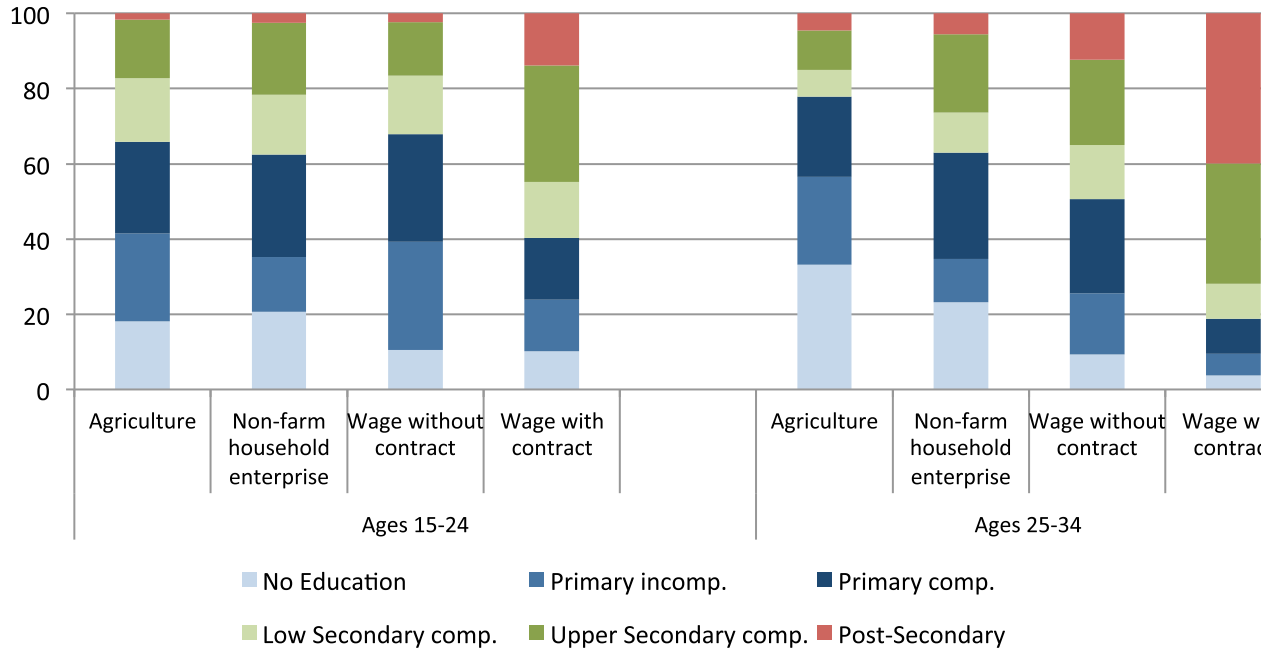
World Bank

Source: Author's analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys.

If necessary, you can renumber the axis using only odd numbers.

Option 1

Figure 7: Education determines opportunities: Education by sector of employment for youths ages 15–24 and 25–34



Source: Authors' analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys.

[[Typesetter:

Figure title: Change figure number to 2.7; delete “Education determines opportunities:”; use headline-style capitalization

Y-axis: Add axis title: “Percent”

X-axis labels: Change “Non-farm” to “Nonfarm” and fix cutoff type

X-axis titles: Replace hyphen in age range with an en-dash

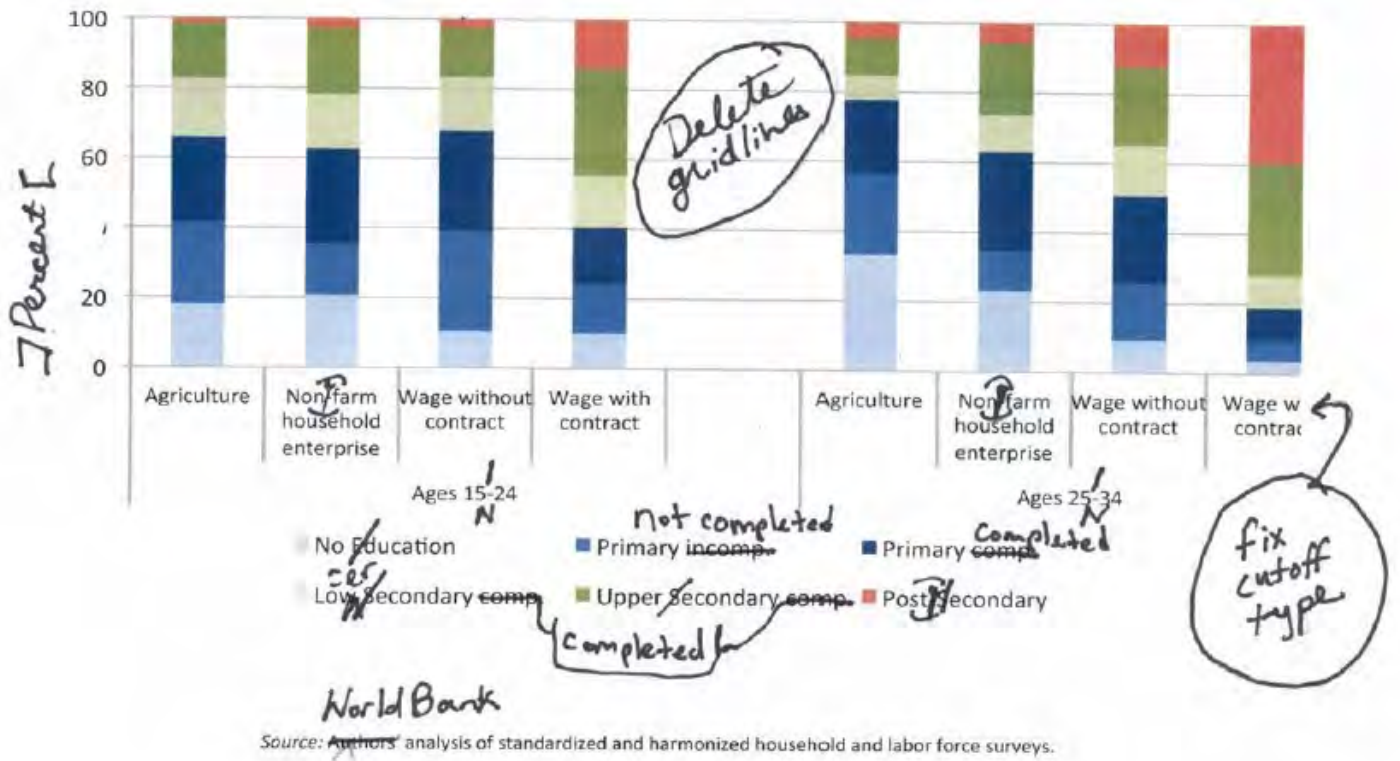
Key: Use sentence-style capitalization; change “incomp.” to “not completed”; change “comp.” to “completed”; change “Low” to “Lower”; change “Post-Secondary” to “Postsecondary”

Source line: Change “Authors” to “World Bank”

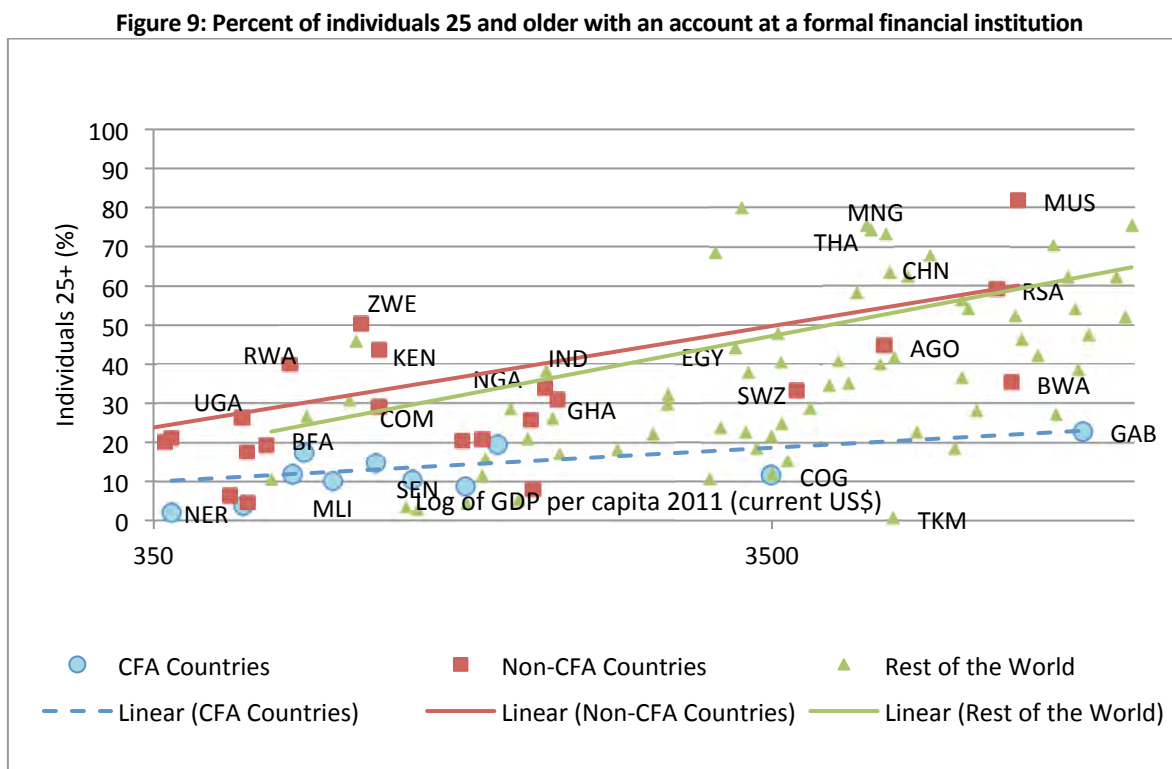
Background: Delete gridlines]]

Option 2

2.
 Figure 7: Education determines opportunities. Education by sector of employment for youths ages 15–24 and 25–34



Option 1



Source: Author's tabulations of FINDEX data

[[Typesetter:

Figure title: Change figure number to 3.9; use headline-style capitalization; change “Percent” to “Percentage”; insert “Ages” between “Individuals” and “25”

Y-axis: Change axis title: “Individuals ages 25 and older (%)”

X-axis labels: Change “3500” to “3,500”

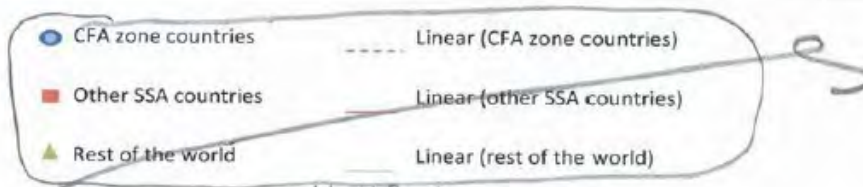
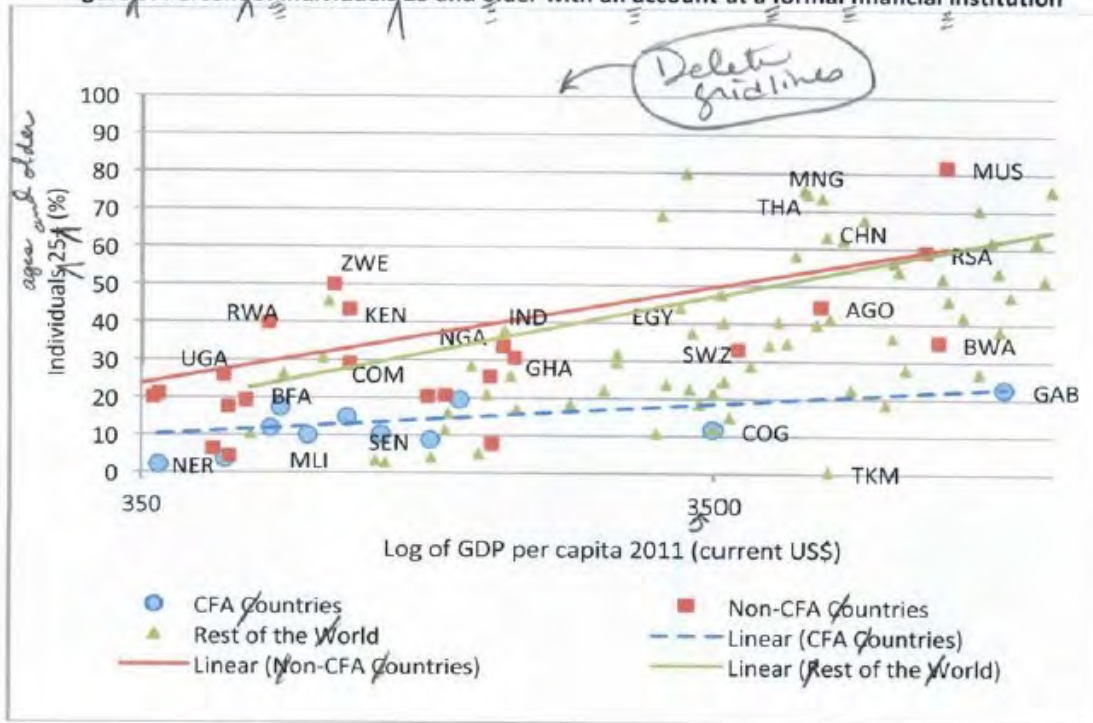
Key: Use sentence-style capitalization except for CFA; delete table under key

Source line: Change “Authors” to “World Bank”; add note directly under source line: “Note: CFA = French Community of Africa (Communauté française d’Afrique).”

Background: Delete box and gridlines]]

Option 2

3. age Ages
 Figure 9: Percent of individuals 25 and older with an account at a formal financial institution

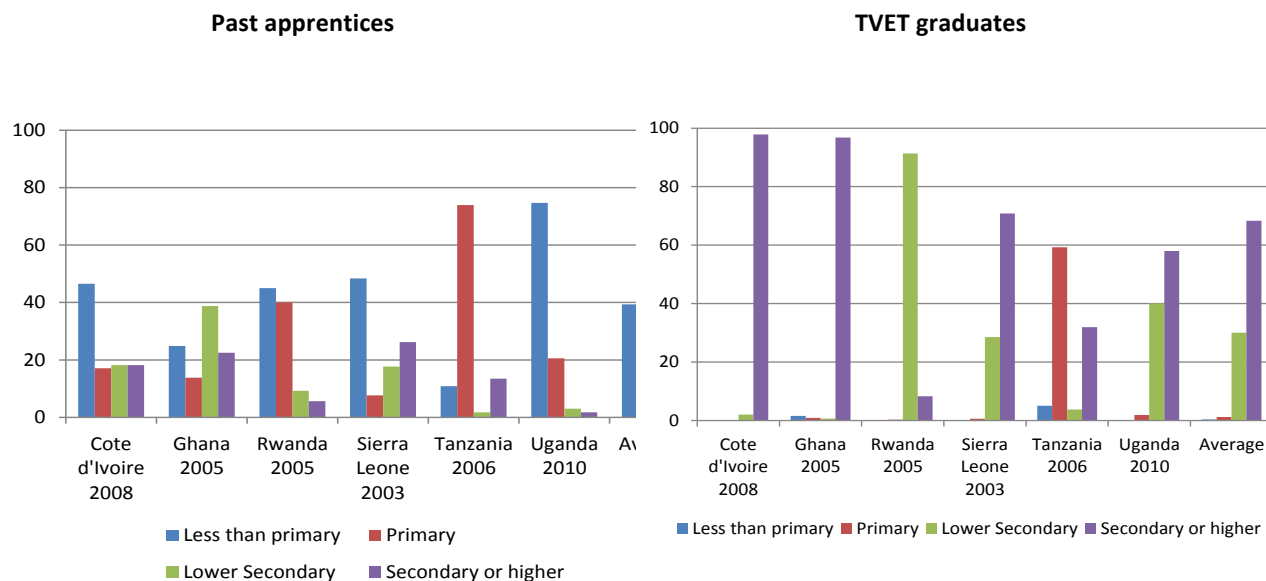


World Bank
 Source: Author's tabulations of FINDEX data

... CFA = French Community of Africa (Communauté)

Option 1

Figure 3.19: Educational profile of past apprentices and TVET graduates (ages 25–34)



Source: Authors' analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys (see Appendix).

[[Typesetter:

Figure title: Use headline-style capitalization; remove parentheses from “Ages 25–34”

Panel labels: Change them to “a. Past apprentices” and “b. TVET graduates”

Y-axis: Insert axis title in both panels: “Percent”

X-axis labels: Change “Cote” to “Côte”; use curly apostrophe in “d'Ivoire”

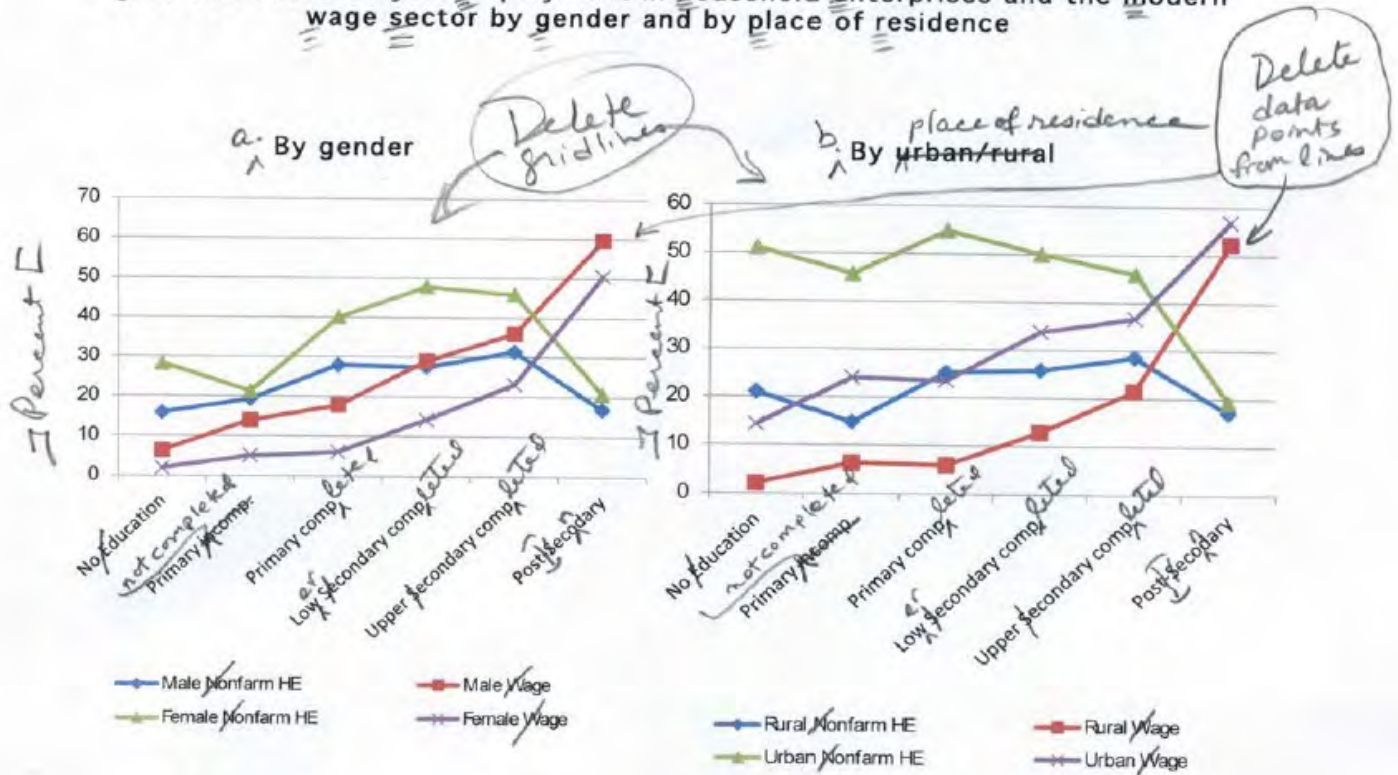
Key: Use sentence-style capitalization

Source line: Change “Authors'” to “World Bank”; lowercase “appendix”; add note directly under source line: “*Note:* TVET = technical and vocational education and training.”

Background: Delete gridlines]]

Option 2

Figure 3.6: Probability of employment in household enterprises and the modern wage sector by gender and by place of residence

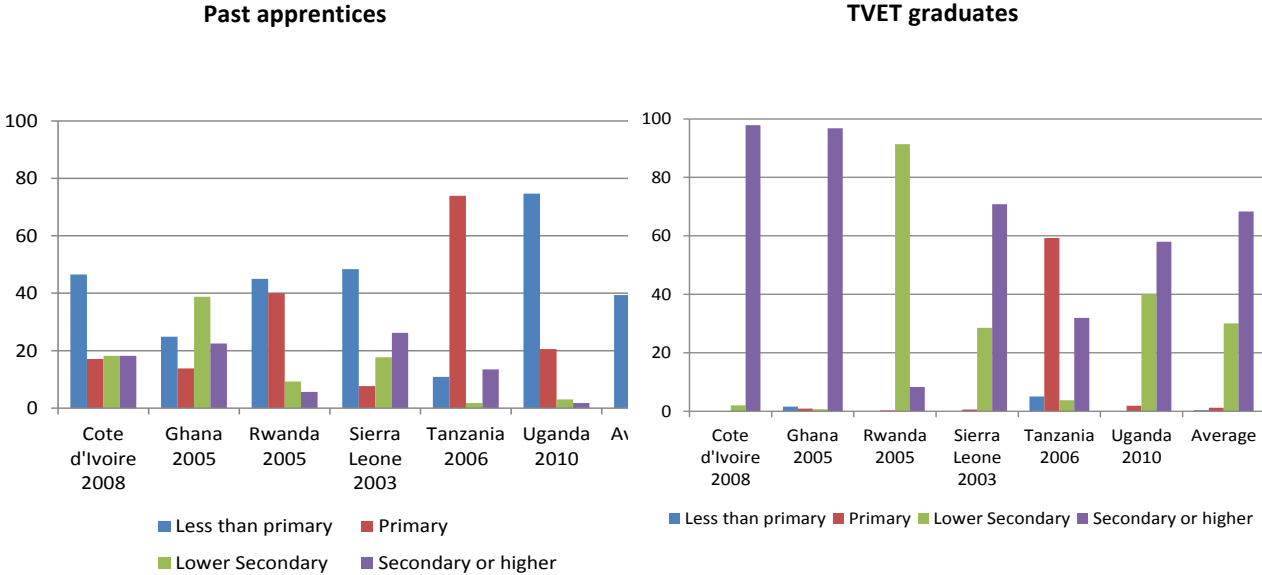


World Bank
 Source: Authors' analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys (see Appendix).

Note: HE = household enterprise

Option 1

Figure 3.19: Educational profile of past apprentices and TVET graduates (ages 25–34)

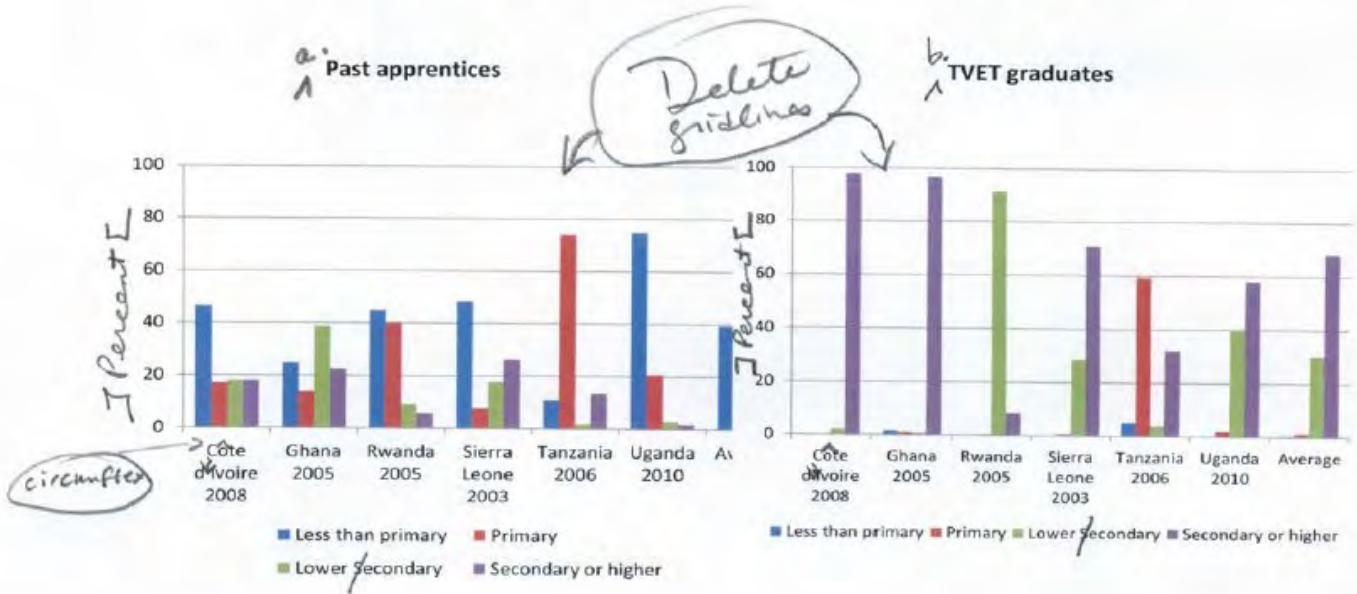


Source: Authors’ analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys (see Appendix).

[[Typesetter:
Figure title: Use headline-style capitalization; remove parentheses from “Ages 25–34”
Panel labels: Change them to “a. Past apprentices” and “b. TVET graduates”
Y-axis: Insert axis title in both panels: “Percent”
X-axis labels: Change “Cote” to “Côte”; use curly apostrophe in “d’Ivoire”
Key: Use sentence-style capitalization
Source line: Change “Authors” to “World Bank”; lowercase “appendix”; add note directly under source line: “Note: TVET = technical and vocational education and training.”
Background: Delete gridlines]]

Option 2

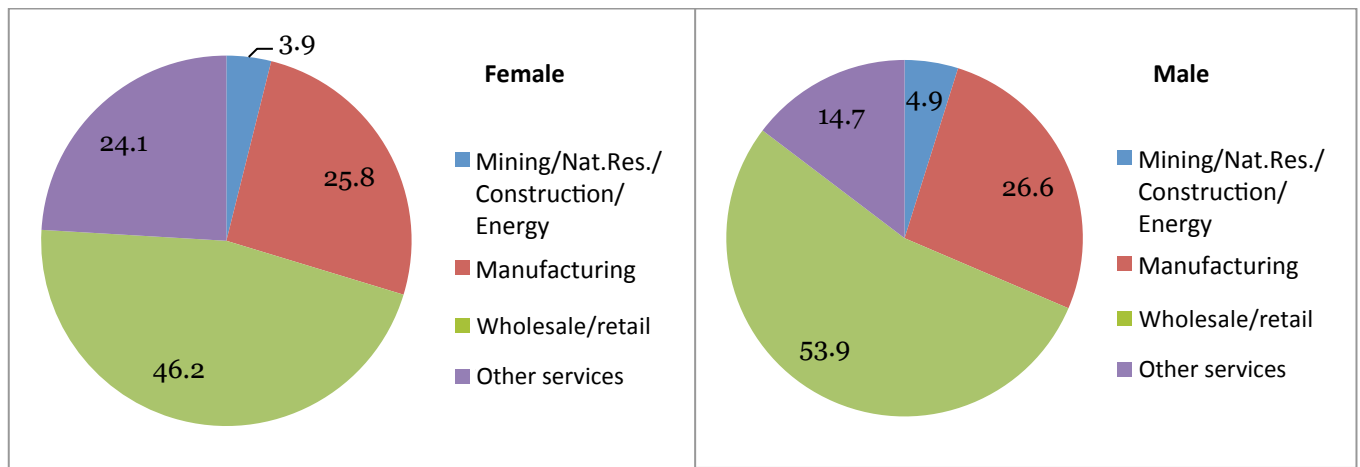
Figure 3.19: Educational profile of past apprentices and TVET graduates (ages 25–34)



World Bank
 Source: Authors' analysis of standardized and harmonized household and labor force surveys (see appendix).
 Note: TVET = technical and vocational education and training

Option 1

Figure 5.3: Most HEs are in the trading sector



Source: Fox and Sohnesen, 2012.

[[Typesetter:

Figure title: Use headline-style capitalization; change title to “Household Enterprises by Gender and Sector”

Panel labels: Center labels above their respective pie charts. Label as follows: “a. Female” and “b. Male”

Pie chart labels: Add % sign after numbers.

Key: Change the first label to “Mining, natural resources, construction, and energy”; change third label to “Wholesale and retail”

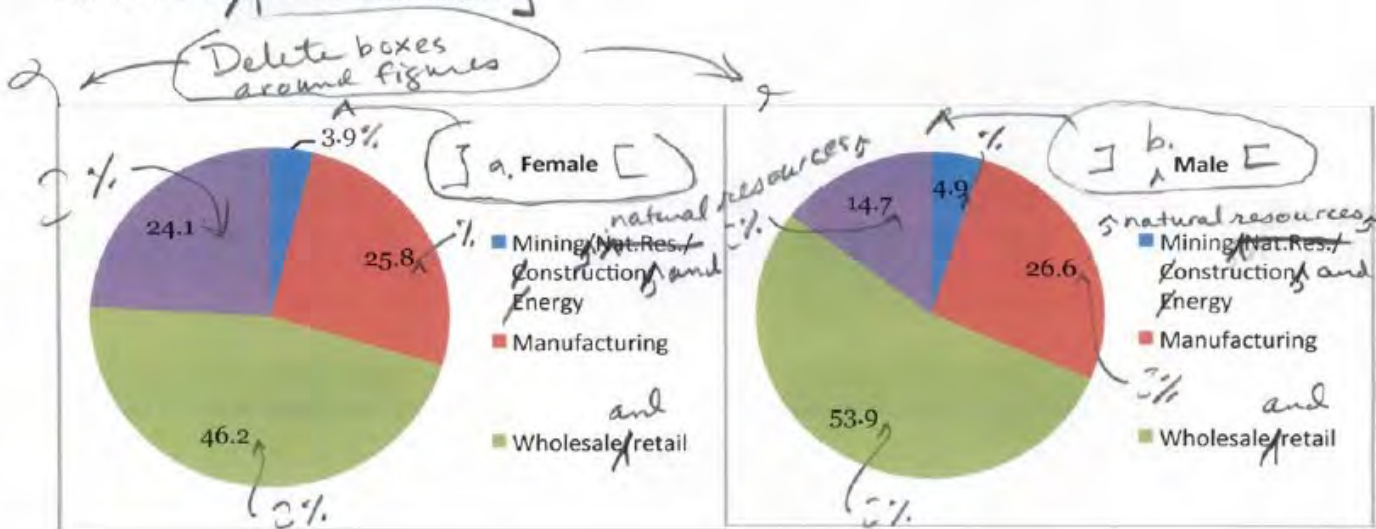
Source line: Delete comma from “Fox and Sohnesen 2012”; add note directly under source line: “*Note:* Totals may not add to 100 because of rounding.”

Background: Delete boxes]]

Option 2

Household Enterprises by Gender and Sector

Figure 5.3: Most HEs are in the trading sector

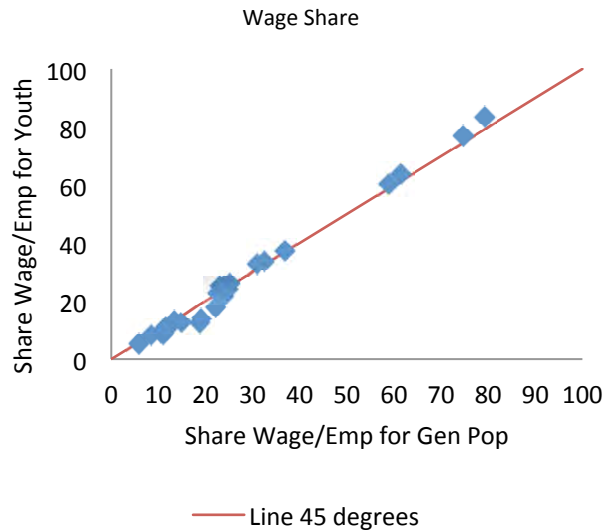


Source: Fox and Sohnesen, 2012.

Note: Totals may not add to 100 because of rounding.

Option 1

Figure 6.1: Share of wage employment in total employment



Source: Authors' analysis of household and labor force surveys.

[[Typesetter:

Figure title: Use headline-style capitalization; delete internal title (“Wage Share”)

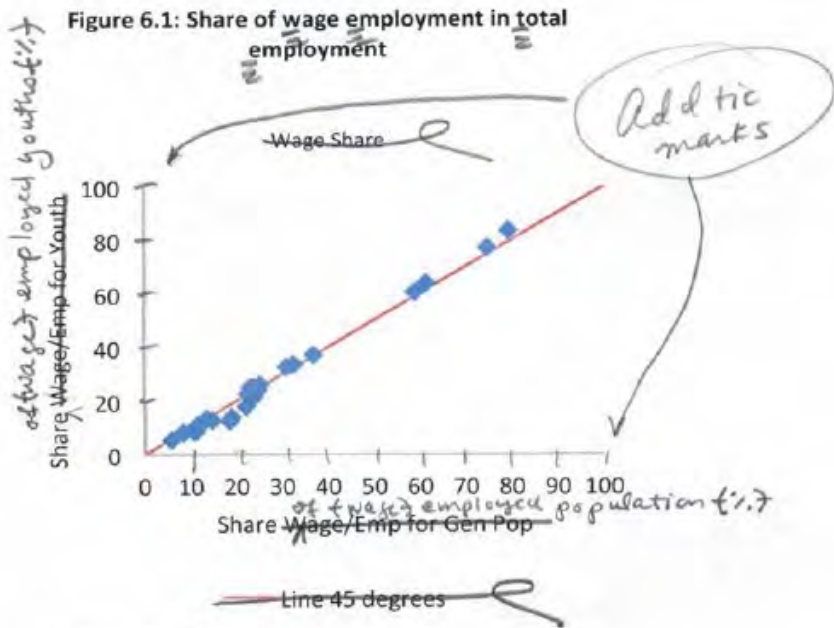
Y-axis: Change label to “Share of (wage) employed youths (%)”; add tic marks

X-axis: Change label to “Share of (wage) employed population (%)”; add tic marks

Key: Delete

Source line: Change “Authors” to “World Bank”]]

Option 2



World Bank

Source: Authors' analysis of household and labor force surveys.

14. TABLES

- 14.1 *Further reference.* For additional information, refer to the World Bank Office of the Publisher’s composition guidelines. Also refer to *Chicago* chapter 3.
- 14.2 *Text references.* Each table should be discussed, by number, in the text. Tables not directly pertinent to the text but of interest to readers should be placed in an annex to the chapter or an appendix to the book.
- 14.3 *Numbering.* Every table should have a number. Tables are numbered separately from boxes and figures unless they appear within a box (refer to section 12.5 of this guide). Double numeration is typically used (for example, table 3.1), and the number is placed above the table.
- **Box tables:** Every table within a box needs a number and title. In the text box, any tables are numbered according to the following example for the first table in box 2.1: Table B2.1.1.
 - **Overview tables:** Tables in an overview use the two-digit convention with the letter “O,” for example, table O.1 for the first table in an overview.
 - **Annex tables:** Tables in a chapter annex have the annex letter inserted after the chapter number (for example, table 3A.1 is the first figure in the first annex to chapter 3).
 - **Appendix tables:** Tables in an appendix use the appendix letter in place of the chapter number (for example, table B.3 is the third table in appendix B).
- 14.4 *Long tables.* For vertical tables that are too long to fit on one page, the typesetter will set “continued”—in italics and preceded by the table number—at the top of each page after the first (for example, “Table 14.5 *continued*”).

Column heads are repeated on *all* pages.

For broadside tables, “continued” is set on all pages, and column heads are repeated on all pages. A drop folio is used. Editors should query authors with options to see if they wish to avoid long or broadside tables.

TITLES

- 14.5 *Placement and format.* Table titles are placed above the table, following the table number. They should use headline-style capitalization (refer to *Chicago* 8.157–159), unless the series template specifies otherwise.
- 14.6 *Content.* Titles should be descriptive, covering “What,” “Where,” and “When.” They should not include background information, repeat column heads, or describe results illustrated by the table. Ellipses or dashes should not be used to connect one table title to the next.

Geographic areas and dates, if relevant, should be placed at the end of the title. Use judgment in determining whether such information is needed. For example, the country name likely is not needed in a book that focuses entirely on one country.

Abbreviations within the title should be avoided but are acceptable in most cases. The preference is to avoid using the World Bank’s regional abbreviations: AFR or SSA, EAP, ECA, LAC, MNA or MENA, and SAR.

UNIT INDICATORS

- 14.7 *Placement and format.* When a single unit indicator applies to the entire table, it is placed below the title but above the table. It is typically set flush left, in italics, and lowercased (unless it is a phrase, in which case sentence-style capitalization should be applied), but defer to the series template. When more than one unit indicator is used within a table, the unit indicators follow the appropriate column heads or stub entries.
- 14.8 *Content.* Abbreviations and symbols may be used in the unit indicator, but avoid a single symbol standing alone (for example, %) when the unit indicator is placed below the title. Define nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols in a note. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined. The word *in* should not be used (for example, *R\$, millions*, not *in R\$ millions*).

COLUMN HEADS

- 14.9 *Capitalization.* Every column should have a heading. Sentence-style capitalization is typically used in column heads, unless the series template stipulates a different style.
- 14.10 *Alignment.* Column heads that run more than one line should align on the last line of the heads.
- 14.11 *Unit indicators.* When unit indicators are given for individual columns, they are lowercased and placed in parentheses following the column heads. Abbreviations and symbols may be used. Nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols should be defined in a note. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined.

14.12 *Content.* Column heads should not end with colons or prepositions. Abbreviations and symbols may be used. Nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols should be defined in a note. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined.

If columns are numbered (for example, in regression tables), use arabic numerals in parentheses.

STUB ENTRIES

14.13 *Capitalization.* Sentence-style capitalization is used in stub entries (*Chicago* 3.57).

14.14 *Order.* Stub entries should be arranged in a readily apparent order (for example, alphabetical or chronological, unless there is a contextual reason for another order).

14.15 *Unit indicators.* When unit indicators are given for individual rows, they are lowercased and placed in parentheses following the stub entry.

Abbreviations and symbols may be used. Define nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols in a note. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined.

14.16 *Content.* Stub entries should not end with colons or prepositions.

Abbreviations and symbols may be used in stub entries. Define nonstandard and previously defined abbreviations and symbols in a note. Standard abbreviations and symbols do not need to be defined.

14.17 *Main entries and subentries.* When no main entries are accompanied by data, all main entries are set in italic, flush left, and are followed by subentries in roman, flush left, unless the series template instructs otherwise. If any main entry is accompanied by data, all main entries are set in roman, flush left, and are followed by subentries set in roman and indented one em.

There is no need for a colon following a main entry.

TABLE BODY

14.18 *Blank cells.* Aside from tables of regressions, no blank cells should appear in the table. Instead, use the symbols listed below. These symbols (other than 0) should be defined in a general note. Insert queries to authors if blank cells are present.

Not available	—
Not applicable	n.a.
Negligible	..
Zero	0

14.19 *Decimals*. Aside from probabilities, a zero should be placed before any decimal that is less than one (for example, 0.25). Numbers that are to be compared should have the same number of decimal places. If they do not, query the author.

14.20 *Notes*. Superscript letters should be used for notes in the table body.

SOURCES

14.21 *Sources*. Use author-date style to refer readers to the source of a publication. The source information is preceded by the word *Source* or *Sources*, in italics, with an initial cap, and followed by a colon and the author's last name and year of publication, with the complete bibliographic information provided in the chapter reference list. Parentheses are not used around the dates in source lines.

The World Bank Legal Department has directed that a source line of "Authors" should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.

Examples

If tables are original and use text and not data, then do not list a source because the publication itself is the original source.

If tables use World Bank data, then cite the data source as specifically as possible, for example, "World Development Indicators Database." In the absence of this information, provide a note specifying "World Bank data" as the source. It is acceptable to start the source line with "An elaboration of ..." or "based on ..." or similar language.

If tables use non-Bank data owned by a third party, then use a standard source line.

If tables are (a) owned by a third party (not the World Bank) and (b) require permission, then use the following line: "Source: [author-date citation], ©[copyright owner]. Reproduced with permission, from [copyright owner]; further permission required for reuse."

NOTES

14.22 *Order*. Follow the order specified in *Chicago* 3.74.

- Source notes appear first.
- General notes (including definitions of nonstandard abbreviations and symbols) appear second.
- Specific (lettered) notes appear third.
- Notes on significance or probability levels appear last (*Chicago* 3.78).

Example

Sources: WHO 2009; World Bank 2011.

Note: Data refer to Eastern Europe and Central Asia. SNA = Survey of National Accounts;

— = not available.

a. Data for Romania are for 1999–2011.

* $p < .05$ ** $p < .01$

Or

Significance level: * = 10 percent, ** = 5 percent, *** = 1 percent

14.23 *General note.* The word *Note*—always singular, in italics, with an initial cap, and followed by a colon—precedes the general note.

Nonstandard abbreviations and symbols should be defined in the general note.

14.24 *Specific notes.* Specific notes are preceded by full-size lowercase letters, they are not raised or superscript, and they are followed by a period. Note reference letters in the table body are superscript.

15. MATHEMATICS

- 15.1 *Further reference.* For additional information, refer to *Chicago* chapter 12.
- 15.2 *Consistency.* Notation and typographical distinctions should be consistent. Refer to *Chicago* 12.4.
- 15.3 *Signs and symbols.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.9–17 and table 12.1.
- 15.4 *Standard abbreviations.* Refer to *Chicago* table 12.2.
- 15.5 *Delimiters.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.26–35.
- 15.6 *Subscripts and superscripts.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.36–38.
- 15.7 *Summations and integrals.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.39–42.
- 15.8 *Radicals.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.43–44.
- 15.9 *Fractions.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.45–49.
- 15.10 *Matrices and determinants.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.50–51.
- 15.11 *Scalars, vectors, and tensors.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.52–55.
- 15.12 *Definitions, theorems, and other formal statements.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.56.
- 15.13 *Probability and statistics.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.57–59.

DISPLAYED EQUATIONS

- 15.14 *When to display mathematical expressions.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.21.
- 15.15 *Line breaks.* Refer to *Chicago* 12.23.

15.16 *Numbering*. Displayed mathematical expressions are always numbered. The equation number may appear to either the left or right of the expression but should be placed consistently. Typically, a double-numeration system is used, and the number, for example, (2.3), is enclosed in parentheses both in the margin and in the textual cross-reference. Refer to *Chicago* 12.24.

PUNCTUATION

15.17 *Multiple expressions in a single display*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.18.

15.18 *Single expression with multiple lines*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.18.

15.19 *End punctuation*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.18.

15.20 *Commas*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.18–19.

15.21 *Ellipses*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.19–20. Ellipsis dots should be vertically centered unless the multiplication dot is present, in which case they should be on the baseline.

15.22 *Minus signs*. Do not use a hyphen or an en dash. Either use a minus sign character, which can be found in Symbols or Character Map (look in Programs, Accessories, System Tools), or instruct the typesetter to set a minus sign. Refer to *Chicago* 6.81.

15.23 *Multiplication cross*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.15 and 12.20. An x should not be used to represent a multiplication symbol. Editors should insert instructions to the typesetter to set the mathematical symbol.

EDITING MATHEMATICS

15.24 Editors should ensure consistency between the way that variables appear in the text and the way they appear in displayed equations. For example, if a variable is lowercased and italicized in the text, then it should be similarly styled in any corresponding equation.

15.25 *Italic characters*. If the editing is done on hard copy, the manuscript editor should clearly identify all italic characters. Refer to *Chicago* 12.62 and 12.64.

15.26 *Ambiguous characters*. If the editing is done on hard copy, the manuscript editor should clearly identify any ambiguous characters. Refer to *Chicago* 12.63 and table 12.4.

15.27 *Superscripts and subscripts*. Refer to *Chicago* 12.66.

16. DOCUMENTATION

16.1 *Further reference.* Please be familiar with *Chicago* chapters 14 and 15.

DOCUMENTATION SYSTEM: SOURCE CITATIONS

16.2 *Author-date style.* The author-date style is preferred. The use of notes is also acceptable, but refer to sections 16.3 and 16.5 in this guide. The manuscript editor should confer with the production editor before proceeding with notes.

When more than one source is cited in the text, editors should use alphabetical order. *However, proofreaders should not reorder sources at the page proof stage.*

Example:

The cost of emergency obstetric care at a rural hospital in Bangladesh was estimated to be US\$11 per DALY averted (Debas 2015; Garrett, Thomas, and Smith 2012; McCord and Chowdhury 2013).

For works by more than three authors, only the name of the first author is used followed by *and others* or *et al.* The choice should be applied consistently. Follow the client's preference if it is apparent. All of the author names are included in the reference list.

When a specific page number or page numbers are needed in the text, the page number follows the date, separated by a comma. The correct form is, therefore, "(Johnson 1999, 12)."

When an organization is the author, the organizational abbreviation (if one exists) should be used. Refer to the first example below.

Examples: Text

Accessions to international agreements and institutions have accelerated (UNCTAD 2012).

Trumbull and Wall (2012) estimate that ODA allocations are responsive to the needs of recipient countries.

This result may reflect the importance of strategic and noneconomic considerations in aid allocation (Alesina and Dollar 2000).

Investors do not value the foreign operations of multinational companies as highly as the domestic (Christophe and Pfeiffer 2012; Denis and others 2015).

Intercompany loans may also substitute for costly external borrowing when local capital markets are underdeveloped (Desai and others 2009a, 2009b).

The estimate of 2.5 million stillbirths based on an extrapolation of previous estimates is very similar to a new estimate for 2015 of 2.6 million (Blencowe and others, forthcoming).

Examples: Following figures, maps, and tables

Source: De la Fuente 2012.

Sources: De la Fuente 2012; World Bank 2012.

Sources: World Bank staff calculations based on data from the UN Economic Commission 2011 and OECD 2010.

Refer to *Chicago* 15.20–30 for additional examples.

- 16.3 *Notes.* If notes are used, they should be placed as endnotes at the end of each chapter preceding the references.

REFERENCE LISTS AND BIBLIOGRAPHIES

- 16.4 *Reference lists.* Reference lists appear at the end of each chapter following the endnotes. In very limited cases, the production editor will decide if they may go at the end of the book.

- 16.5 *Bibliographies.* When a list of sources includes uncited publications, it is called a *bibliography* or a *select bibliography*, whichever is appropriate. Bibliographic entries follow the same arrangement and format as entries in a reference list.

Bibliographies appear at the end of each chapter, although a book with references at the end of a chapter may have a bibliography as part of the back matter. If one chapter uses a bibliography, then the term *bibliography* should be used for the source lists of all chapters.

Content

- 16.6 *Minimum information needed.* Complete source information is highly desirable, and the author should be queried for any missing pieces. However, if the

author has been queried and if the missing information is not forthcoming, then the bare minimum that is needed is listed below.

- Books: author's last name, date, and title
- Journals: author's last name, date, article title, journal title, volume number or year
- Informal publications: author's last name, date, title, and description of publication (for example, speech or conference paper)

16.7 *Author names.* Preferably the full name should be used. However, it is also acceptable for initials to be used with the last name. Mixing of full names and initials should be avoided but is permitted.

When the author is an organization, the organizational abbreviation (if one exists) should be used followed by the full name in parentheses.

For books, the organization is also given as the publisher.

Examples

Batchelor, Roy A. 2012. "How Useful Are Forecasts of Intergovernmental Agencies? The IMF and OECD versus the Consensus." *Applied Economics* 33 (2): 225–35.

Gunter, Frank R. 1999. "Capital Flight from the People's Republic of China: 1984–1994." *China Economic Review* 7 (1): 77–96.

UNCTAD (United Nations Conference on Trade and Development). 2011. *World Investment Report 2011: Non-equity Modes of Production and Development*. Geneva: UNCTAD.

For repeated author names in a reference list, the 3-em dash method should be used. Refer to *Chicago* 15.17–18.

16.8 *Multiple authors.* Refer to *Chicago* 15.9. For the arrangement of entries, refer to *Chicago* 15.16–17.

16.9 *Titles.* Refer to sections 7.16–32 in this guide.

16.10 *Copublications.* A few options exist for copublications. Refer to section 16.23 in this guide as well as *Chicago* 14.147. Whichever option is chosen, it should be followed consistently.

16.11 *Informal publications.* The terms *processed* or *mimeo* are no longer used with informal publications. Instead, the type of publication should be specified, and any available information should be provided. The titles should be in quotation marks. Refer to *Chicago* 14.224–246.

Titles use headline-style capitalization and are enclosed in quotation marks.

Material posted on the Internet is considered published for copyright purposes and should therefore be cited. Refer to *Chicago* 14.9.

16.12 *Legal and public documents.* Follow *Chicago* 14.281–317 and 15.54–55. *Chicago* has adopted *The Bluebook: A Uniform System of Citation*, with the *ALWD Citation Manual: A Professional System of Citation* as an alternative.

Bibliographic information for public documents is often best placed in a note rather than in the reference list (for example, surveys that occur annually and for which multiple years are being cited).

It is not necessary to include laws and statutes, which are easily obtained from multiple sources, in the reference list, if the full name of the law or statute has been provided in the text.

- 16.13 *E-mail and other personal communications.* Refer to *Chicago* 14.218–223 and 15.48.
- 16.14 *Databases.* Refer to *Chicago* 14.271–272. Databases can be problematic in an author-date citation system. In such cases, they may be cited in a note.

Examples

BOOKS

16.15 *One author*

Goldstein, Morris. 2012. *The Asian Financial Crisis: Causes, Cures, and Systemic Implications*. Washington, DC: Institute for International Economics.

EBRD (European Bank for Reconstruction and Development). 2015. *Transition Report 2002: Agriculture and Rural Transition*. London: EBRD.

16.16 *Multiple authors*

Broadman, Harry G., James Anderson, Constantijn A. Claessens, Randi Ryterman, Stefka Slavova, Maria Vagliasindi, and Gallina A. Vincelette. 2009. *Building Market Institutions in South Eastern Europe: Comparative Prospects for Investment and Private Sector Development*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

Scherer, Frederick M., and David Ross. 1995. *Industrial Market Structure and Economic Performance*. 3rd ed. New York: Houghton-Mifflin.

16.17 *Editor in place of an author*

Broadman, Harry, ed. 2010. *Unleashing Russia's Business Potential: Lessons from the Regions for Building Market Institutions*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

16.18 *Print and electronic versions*

World Bank. 2003. *World Bank Annual Report 2003*. Washington, DC: World Bank. <https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/13929>.

16.19 *Chapter in an edited volume*

Ajayi, S. Ibi. 2000. "Capital Flight and External Debt in Nigeria." In *External Debt and Capital Flight in Sub-Saharan Africa*, edited by S. Ibi Ajayi and Mohsin S. Khan, 25–34. Washington, DC: International Monetary Fund.

16.20 *Forthcoming works*

Kaplan, Ethan, and Dani Rodrik. Forthcoming. "Did the Malaysian Capital Controls Work?" In *Preventing Currency Crises in Emerging Markets*, edited by Sebastian Edwards and Jeffrey Frankel. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

16.21 *Series*

van der Gaag, Jacques. 2012. *Private and Public Initiatives Working Together for Health and Education*. Directions in Development Series. Washington, DC: World Bank.

16.22 *Multivolume works*

World Bank. 2012. *Global Development Finance 2002: Financing the Poorest Countries*. 2 vols. Washington, DC: World Bank.

World Bank. 2012. *Analysis and Summary Tables*. Vol. 1 of *Global Development Finance 2012: Financing the Poorest Countries*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

16.23 *Copublications* (Individual publications should be treated consistently.)

Option 1

Stiglitz, Joseph, and Shahid Yusuf, eds. 2001. *Rethinking the East Asian Miracle*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

Option 2

Stiglitz, Joseph, and Shahid Yusuf, eds. 2001. *Rethinking the East Asian Miracle*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Option 3

Stiglitz, Joseph, and Shahid Yusuf, eds. 2001. *Rethinking the East Asian Miracle*. Washington, DC: World Bank; New York: Oxford University Press.

16.24 *Languages other than English* (Titles normally use sentence-style capitalization; see section 7.28 of this guide.)

Boeri, Tito. 2000. *Uno stato asociale: Perché è fallito il welfare in Italia*. Bari, Italy: Laterza.

16.25 *World Bank Studies*

World Bank Studies will now be treated as books and should be cited as follows.

Example

Makinen, Marty, Leo Deville, and Amanda Folsom. 2012. *Assessment of the Private Sector in the Republic of Congo*. A World Bank Study. Washington, DC: World Bank. doi:10.1596/978-0-8213-9705-3.

In the example, the doi number has been provided simply because it was available; providing this number, querying for it, or seeking consistent provision of it in reference lists is not necessary.

JOURNAL ARTICLES

(Enclose article titles in quotation marks, and use headline-style capitalization.)

16.26 *Standard listing*

Gunter, Frank R. 1996. "Capital Flight from the People's Republic of China: 1984–94." *China Economic Review* 7 (1): 77–96.

Cashin, Paul, and C. John McDermott. 2003. "An Unbiased Appraisal of Purchasing Power Parity." *IMF Staff Papers* 50 (3): 321–52.

16.27 *No issue number*

Fernandez-Arias, Eduardo, and Peter J. Montiel. 1996. "The Surge in Capital Inflows to Developing Countries: An Analytical Overview." *World Bank Economic Review* 10: 51–77.

16.28 *Month instead of issue number*

Benhabib, Jess, and Mark M. Spiegel. 1994. "The Role of Human Capital in Economic Development: Evidence from Aggregate Cross-Country Data." *Journal of Monetary Economics* 34 (October): 143–73.

INFORMAL PUBLICATIONS

(Refer to *Chicago* 14.224–231 and 15.48–51. Publication titles should be enclosed in quotation marks, and headline-style capitalization should be used.)

16.29 *Working paper*

Barth, James, Gerard Caprio Jr., and Ross Levine. 2001. "Bank Regulation and Supervision: What Works Best?" Policy Research Working Paper 2725, World Bank, Washington, DC.

Holzmann, Robert, and Steen Lau Jorgensen. 2000. "Social Risk Management: A New Conceptual Framework for Social Protection and Beyond." Social Protection Discussion Paper 0006, Human Development Network, World Bank, Washington, DC.

16.30 *Paper presented at a conference* (Include the date of the conference.)

Kearney, John. 2010. "FDI Confidence Index: Flash Survey." Paper presented at the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development Global Forum on International Investment, "New Horizons and Policy Challenges for Foreign Direct Investment in the 21st Century," Mexico City, November 26–27.

16.31 *Conference paper in print and electronic formats*

Corsetti, Biancarlo, Paolo Pesenti, and Nouriel Roubini. 1998. "Fundamental Determinants of the Asian Crisis: A Preliminary Empirical Assessment." Paper prepared for the Journal of International Money and Finance and Fordham University Conference, "Perspectives on the Financial Crisis in Asia," New York, October 16. <http://pages.stern.nyu.edu/~nroubini/asia/jimf06.pdf>.

16.32 *News release*

UNCTAD (United Nations Conference on Trade and Development). 2002. "FDI Downturn in 2001 Touches Almost All Regions." Press Release TAD/INF/PR36, January 21.

PUBLIC DOCUMENTS

16.33 *Report*

Uganda, Ministry of Health. 1997. *Exploring the Potential for Community Health Insurance and Prepayment Schemes: Towards the Development of Alternative Health Financing Options in Uganda*, by John Arube-Wani. Consultant report, Kampala.

ELECTRONIC PUBLICATIONS

Chicago offers guidance with respect to many types of issues related to electronic publications. For information about general considerations such as electronic resource identifiers, URLs, DOIs, authority and permanence, and source citation software, refer to *Chicago* 14.4–13.

16.34 Electronic books

- World Bank Institute. 1999. *Procurement in World Bank Financed Projects*. Washington, DC: World Bank. CD-ROM, version 4.0.
- Stiglitz, Joseph E. 2002. *Globalization and Its Discontents*. New York: W. W. Norton. Kindle edition.
- Easterly, William. 2007. *The White Man's Burden: Why the West's Efforts to Aid the Rest Have Done So Much Ill and So Little Good*. New York: Penguin Press. Microsoft Reader e-book.
- World Bank. 2003. *World Bank Annual Report 2003*. Washington, DC: World Bank. <https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/13929>.
- World Bank. 2015. *World Development Report 2015: Mind, Society, and Behavior*. Washington, DC: World Bank. doi:10.1596/978-1-4648-0342-0.
- Smith, Adam. 1776. *An Inquiry into the Nature and Causes of the Wealth of Nations*. Project Gutenberg, 2009. <http://www.gutenberg.org/files/3300/3300-h/3300-h.htm>.

16.35 Electronic journals

- Hanushek, Eric A., and Dennis D. Kimko. 2000. "Schooling, Labor Force Quality, and the Growth of Nations." *American Economic Review* 90 (5):1184–208. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2677847>.
- Dovern, Jonas, and Peter Nunnenkamp. 2007. "Aid and Growth Accelerations: An Alternative Approach to Assessing the Effectiveness of Aid." *Kyklos* 60 (3): 359–83. doi:10.1111/j.1467-6435.2007.00376.x.
- Swindle, Jeffrey. 2011. "The Tough Realities Small NGOs Face When Evaluating Their Efforts: Observations from Guatemala and Mexico." *Consilience* 6 (1): 251–63. <http://www.consiliencejournal.org/index.php/consilience/article/viewFile/179/68>.
- Zhang, Haiyang, and Tetsushi Sonobe. 2011. "The Development of Science and Technology Parks in China, 1988–2008." *Economics* 5 (2011-6). doi:10.5018/economicsejournal.ja.2011-6.

16.36 Electronic magazines

- Acemoglu, Daron. 2009. "What Makes a Nation Rich? One Economist's Big Answer." *Esquire*, November 18. <http://www.esquire.com/features/best-and-brightest-2009/world-poverty-map-1209>.
- King, Ian. 2010. "Intel Wants to Be Inside Everything." *Bloomberg Businessweek*, September 2. http://www.businessweek.com/magazine/content/10_37/b4194029898101.htm.

16.37 Electronic informal publications

- Krugman, Paul. 1999. "Analytical Afterthoughts on the Asian Crisis." Massachusetts Institute of Technology. <http://web.mit.edu/krugman/www/MINICRIS.htm>.

Görg, Holger, Aoife Hanley, and Eric Strobl. 2010. "FDI in Ireland: New Findings for Grants and Local Partnerships." *VoxEU.org*, October 5. <http://www.voxeu.org/index.php?q=node/5619>.

16.38 Blogs

Booth, David. 2013. "Can Aid Become More Relevant to 'Getting Things Done?'" *Governance for Development* (blog), October 24. <http://blogs.worldbank.org/governance/>.

Mankiw, Greg. 2014. "More on a Nominal GDP Target." *Greg Mankiw's Blog: Random Observations for Students of Economics*, October 29. <http://gregmankiw.blogspot.com/>.

16.39 Online dictionaries and encyclopedias

Entries in online dictionaries can be problematic to the author-date citation system and may be better placed in notes than in references.

Online encyclopedia articles often are dated and include an author name. In such cases, they should be included in the reference list.

Example: As a note

1. As defined in *Oxford Dictionary of Economics*, s.v. "ad valorem tax," <http://www.enotes.com/econ-encyclopedia/ad-valorem-tax>.

Example: As a reference entry

Cogan, John F. 1991. "Federal Budget." In *The Concise Encyclopedia of Economics*. <http://www.econlib.org/library/Enc1/FederalBudget.html>.

16.40 Databases

If *database* does not appear in the title, then it should be indicated as such in parentheses following the title. Location and access dates should be provided, if possible. Databases can be problematic to the author-date citation system and may be better placed in notes than in references.

Examples: As a source line for a figure or table

Source: Projects Database (Uttar Pradesh State Roads Project), World Bank, Washington, DC (accessed January 14, 2012), <http://worldbank.org/projects>.

Source: Doing Business Indicators (database), World Bank, Washington, DC (accessed March 2, 2015), <http://www.doingbusiness.org>.

Examples: As a note

Data in this section are from the Projects Database of the Uttar Pradesh State Roads Project, World Bank, Washington, DC (accessed January 14, 2012), <http://worldbank.org/projects>.

Economy data for Algeria are from Doing Business Indicators (database), World Bank, Washington, DC (accessed March 2, 2015), <http://www.doingbusiness.org>.

16.41 Websites

Websites are best placed in a note rather than in the reference list because their usefulness in terms of finding the source material is often limited and because undated material is problematic to the author-date citation system. Refer to *Chicago* 14.245–246. Include the protocol (for example, <http://>) in the Web address. If possible, URLs should not be presented alone but should include text explaining their content.

Examples: As a note

For more information about the company, see Keppel's website at <http://www.keppcorp.com/en/content.aspx?sid=80>.

For an overview of global issues addressed by the United Nations, see the UN website at <http://www.un.org/en/globalissues/>.

REFERENCE LISTS

16.42 Example of a reference list

Reminder: It is preferable to place source information for websites, databases, and online dictionaries in a note. Government publications (such as the Uganda entries on the next page) would be better placed in a note rather than in the reference list.

- Ahmed, Masood. 2013. "What to Do about Unemployment in Caucasus and Central Asia." iMFdirect (blog), October 31. <http://blog-imfdirect.imf.org>.
- Albarran, Alan B. 2015. "Media Economics." In *The International Encyclopedia of Communication*, edited by Wolfgang Donsbach. doi:10.1111/b.9781405131995.2008.
- Barysch, Katinka. 2004. "EU Enlargement: How to Reap the Benefits." *Economic Trends* 2: 28–31. http://www.cer.org.uk/sites/default/files/barysch_economicstrends_june%2004.pdf.
- Chang, Pao-Long, Chintay Shih, and Chiung-Wen Hsu. 1994. "The Formation Process of Taiwan's IC Industry: Method of Technology Transfer." *Technovation* 14 (3): 161–71.
- Chen, Tain-Jy. 2015. "Technical Change and Technical Adaptation of Multinational Firms." *Economic Development and Cultural Change* 40 (4): 867–81.
- Chen, Tain-Jy, Been-Lon Chen, and Yun-Peng Chu. 2011. "The Development of Taiwan's Electronics Industry." Paper presented at the Sasakawa Peace Foundation conference "Rethinking the East Asian Development Paradigm," Tokyo, November 28–29.
- Dahlman, Carl J. 2011. "Technology Strategy in East Asian Developing Economies." *Journal of Asian Economics* 5 (Winter): 541–72.
- Deutschman, Alan. 2005. "Building a Better Movie Business." *Fast Company*, December. <http://www.fastcompany.com/54853/building-better-movie-business>.
- Devereux, Stephen, and Larissa Pelham. 2005. "Making Cash Count: Lessons from Cash Transfer Schemes in East and Southern Africa for Supporting the Most Vulnerable Children and Households." Save the Children UK, HelpAge International, and Institute of Development Studies, London. <http://www.ids.ac.uk/files/MakingCashCountfinal.pdf>.
- Economist. 2011. "A Bridge Too Far?" June 9. <http://www.economist.com/node/4031129>.
- Engardio, Pete. 2012. "Singapore's One North." *Bloomberg Businessweek*, June 1. http://www.businessweek.com/innovate/content/jun2009/id2009061_019963.htm.

- Estache, Antonio. 2012. "Emerging Infrastructure Policy Issues in Developing Countries: A Survey of the Recent Economic Literature." Background paper, World Bank, Washington, DC.
- Estache, Antonio, Andres Gomez-Lobo, and Danny Leipziger. 2012. "Utility Privatizations and the Poor's Needs in Latin America: Have We Learnt Enough to Get It Right?" Paper presented at the conference "Infrastructure for Development: Private Solutions and the Poor," sponsored by the Public-Private Infrastructure Advisory Facility, the U.K. Department for International Development, and the World Bank, London, May 31–June 2.
- Estache, Antonio, and Tomás Serebrisky. 2011. "Where Do We Stand on Transport Infrastructure Deregulation and Public-Private Partnership?" Policy Research Working Paper 3315, World Bank, Washington, DC.
- Florida, Richard. 2011. *Rise of the Creative Class*. New York: Basic Books. Kindle edition.
- Friedman, Thomas L. 2012. *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the Twenty-First Century (Further Updated and Expanded)*. New York: Farrar, Strauss and Giroux. Nook e-book.
- High, Kamau. 2005. "American Gamers Get Their Adventures Direct from Japan." 2009. *Financial Times*, October 25. <http://www.ft.com/home/us>.
- Hu, Angang. 2002. "Knowledge and Development: The New Catch-Up Strategy." In *China's Future in the Knowledge Economy: Engaging the New World*, edited by Bhajan Grewal, Lan Xue, Peter Sheehan, and Fiona Sun, 240–69. Beijing: Tsinghua University Press; Melbourne: Victoria University, Centre for Strategic Economic Studies.
- Keynes, John Maynard. 1920. *The Economic Consequences of the Peace*. Project Gutenberg, 2005. <http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15776/15776-h/15776-h.htm>.
- Lewis, Michael. 2011. "When Irish Eyes Are Crying." *Vanity Fair*, March. <http://www.vanityfair.com/business/features/2011/03/michael-lewis-ireland-201103>.
- Lim, L. Y. C. 1978. "Multinational Firms and Manufacturing for Export in Less Developed Countries: The Case of the Electronics Industry in Malaysia and Singapore." PhD thesis, University of Michigan.
- Lucky, Robert. 2012. "The Quickening of Science Communication." *Science* 289 (5477): 259–89. doi:10.1126/science.289.5477.259.
- Makinen, Marty, Leo Deville, and Amanda Folsom. 2012. *Assessment of the Private Sector in the Republic of Congo*. A World Bank Study. Washington, DC: World Bank. doi:10.1596/978-0-8213-9705-3.
- Mathews, John A. 2012a. "Competitive Advantages of the Latecomer Firm: A Resource-Based Account of Industrial Catch-Up Strategies." *Asia Pacific Journal of Management* 19 (4): 467–88.
- . 2012b. "The Origins and Dynamics of Taiwan's R&D Consortia." *Research Policy* 31 (4): 633–51.
- . Forthcoming. *Strategizing, Disequilibrium, and Profit*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.
- Mathews, John A., and Dong-Song Cho. 2000. *Tiger Technology: The Creation of a Semiconductor Industry in East Asia*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press.
- Trucano, Michael. 2011. "Surveying ICT Use in Education in Brazil." *EduTech* (blog), October 31. <http://blogs.worldbank.org/edutech/>.
- Uganda, Ministry of Finance, Planning, and Economic Development. 1996. *Statistical Abstracts*. Uganda Bureau of Statistics, Kampala.
- . 2011. *Statistical Abstracts*. Uganda Bureau of Statistics, Kampala.
- . 2012. *Statistical Abstracts*. Uganda Bureau of Statistics, Kampala.
- World Bank. 2010. *World Development Report 2011: Conflict, Security, and Development*. Washington, DC: World Bank. http://siteresources.worldbank.org/INTWDRS/Resources/WDR2011_Full_Text.pdf.

- . 2011a. *World Development Indicators 2011*. Washington, DC: World Bank. CD-ROM.
- . 2011b. *World Development Report 2012: Gender Equality and Development*. Washington, DC: World Bank. doi:10.1596/978-0-8213-8810-5.
- Xinhua News Agency. 2015. "Beijing Digs Deep in Quest for Green Energy." *China Daily*, July 21.

17. INDEXES

17.1 *Further reference.* For additional information, refer to the External and Corporate Relations Publishing and Knowledge division's General Composition and Page Makeup Guidelines document, which is provided to typesetters, and *Chicago* chapter 16.

17.2 *What to index.* Text, substantive notes (refer to *Chicago* 16.110–114), text boxes (indicated with an italic *b*), figures (indicated with an italic *f*), tables (indicated with an italic *t*), and appendixes should be indexed.

Front matter is indexed on a case-by-case basis, depending on what it contains.

Separate page numbers should be provided for the text discussion and any graphical representation. For example, “18, 18*f*, 18*t*” would indicate that the topic appears in the text on page 18, in a figure on page 18, and in a table on page 18.

A note such as the following should be placed at the top of the index: “Note: *b* indicates boxes, *f* indicates figures, and *t* indicates tables.”

17.3 *Capitalization.* The first word of a main heading is lowercased unless the word is capitalized in the text.

17.4 *Inclusive numbers.* Follow the preference of *Chicago* (refer to *Chicago* 16.14).

17.5 *Cross-references.* Refer to *Chicago* 16.15–23 and 16.26 for information about see references, see also references, and generic references.

Abbreviations should have cross-references to their spelled-out forms unless the reader is likely to find the abbreviation and the spelled-out form within a few entries of each other. A cross-reference should not be used when there is only one page locator.

Examples

CEDAW. See Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women

Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women (CEDAW)

Afghanistan judicial reforms and, 81*b*

Southeastern Europe, ratification by countries in, 82*b*

ILO (International Labour Organization), 107

International Labour Organization (ILO), 107

United Nations Transitional Authority in Cambodia (UNCTAC), 85*t*

17.6 *Style*. The index should be set in indented style with runover lines set as 3-em hanging indents.

Subentries indent 1 em from main entries, and sub-subentries indent 1 em from subentries.

17.7 *Alphabetization*. Letter-by-letter alphabetization should be used.

17.8 *Numbers*. Numbers other than page citations (dates, for example) should be placed in parentheses.

APPENDIX A.1 EDITORIAL CHECKLISTS FOR LEVELS OF EDITING (A, B, C)

DEVELOPMENTAL EDITING CHECKLIST (LEVEL A)

The following is a list of potential developmental editing (level A) tasks. These tasks affect the manuscript's form, structure, and content. They occur prior to a manuscript edit. The client will indicate which of these tasks are to be performed, if any, and this information will be provided to the developmental editor. Developmental edits proceed at roughly 2 manuscript pages an hour.

- Create the manuscript outline.
- Draft the manuscript from the author-approved outline.
- Assemble the manuscript from various materials supplied by the author.
- Revise the manuscript to address peer review comments.
- Reorganize the author-supplied text as needed to improve its structure and to sharpen its argument.
- Rewrite the text to sharpen its argument, set the right tone, and achieve the desired manuscript length (that is, the length appropriate for the intended readers).
- Write material to make connections among ideas explicit and to explain or illustrate complex concepts.
- Suggest additional material (such as boxes, figures, a glossary, an index, or tables) that would make the book more reader-friendly and valuable.
- Provide such material.
- Delete material that is tangential and of little value to the majority of the book's intended readers, that goes into detail greater than required for the readers' understanding of the author's point, or that interrupts an otherwise logical flow of ideas.
- Reorganize and revise boxes, figures, maps, tables, and other material, as appropriate, to convey the author's message effectively.

SUBSTANTIVE EDITING CHECKLIST (LEVEL B)

The following is a list of potential substantive editing (level B) tasks. The client will indicate which of these tasks are to be performed, if any, and the production editor will provide this information to the manuscript editor. Additionally, the manuscript editor performs all mechanical editing tasks (refer to the mechanical editing checklist that follows). Substantive editing proceeds at roughly three to four pages an hour. (See *Chicago* 2.45 and 2.47–48 for more information about substantive editing.)

Readability

- Point out and suggest solutions for factual inconsistencies, faulty logic, particularly awkward or unclear passages, and incomplete comparisons.
- Cut or edit redundant passages, and simplify long, complicated sentences.
- Smooth transitions between paragraphs or sections.
- Simplify technical language, eliminate jargon, and propose or introduce definitions.
- Ensure that the style is consistent in multiauthor works.
- Make revisions in response to peer review comments relating to the readability of the manuscript given the intended audience.
- Break up long sequences of modifiers before nouns.
- Replace passive constructions with active verbs, when appropriate.
- Eliminate excess words that do not advance the argument.

Overall Consistency

- Suggest text to eliminate stacked heads.

Lists

- Eliminate unnecessary use of letters or numerals in run-in lists.
- Attempt to run short displayed lists into the text.

Figures and Tables

- Edit tables and figures so that they illustrate their point and present similar data consistently.
- Eliminate text that does nothing more than repeat the data in tables or figures.
- Examine complicated tables to see if they can be simplified. If possible, edit broadside (landscape) tables so that they can be converted into vertical (portrait) tables.

MECHANICAL EDITING CHECKLIST (LEVEL C)

The following is a list of mechanical editing (level C) tasks. Mechanical editing proceeds at roughly five to six pages an hour. (See *Chicago* 2.46 for more information about mechanical editing.)

General Tasks

- Ensure that the manuscript is set up as individual files for the front matter, chapters, appendixes, and any other back matter.
- Be sure that each chapter has its own notes and references that follow the end of the text. Do not use a single alphabetical reference list as the back matter.
- Maintain a style sheet. Provide the current version of the style sheet with each batch of the edited manuscript (when working on a flow basis) or when editing is complete.

- Insert author queries into the text using bold and double brackets (for example, **[[AQ: Please clarify the sentence.]]**) Do not use the comments or footnotes function.
- Label heading levels using Microsoft Word formatting guidance from ECRPK.
- Keep the figures in place in the text for reference. The editor may also choose to copy the figures and set up separate figure files by chapter. Whichever option is chosen, insert callouts for correct figure placement in the text file (for example, <<Place figure 2.1 about here.>>). Keep the figure titles, numbers, notes, and sources in the text.
- Insert callouts in the text file for any equations, figures, maps, photographs, or tables that are being provided to the typesetter in separate files.

Readability

- Point out factual inconsistencies, faulty logic, particularly awkward or unclear passages, incomplete comparisons, and vague time references (*in 2015* is better than *last year*).
- Point out first- and second-person pronouns when it is not clear to whom they are referring or when they seem inappropriate in the context of the rest of the manuscript.
- Point out demonstrative pronouns (*this, that, these, those*) when the antecedent is unclear.
- Fix dangling participles, subject-verb disagreement, incorrect preposition choices, infinitives incorrectly used in place of prepositional phrases, and other lapses.

Overall Consistency

- Follow World Bank conventions for country and economy names; alphabetize country and economy names listed in figures, tables, and text unless there is a clear reason to order them differently.
- Make punctuation, capitalization, spelling, and so on consistent, correct, and in accord with *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th edition, and the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*.
- Edit chapter titles and subheads to be informative, to facilitate electronic searches, to have parallel construction, and to be consistent in style.
- Query inconsistencies in the spelling and diacritics of proper names and foreign words.
- Spell out each abbreviation at first mention within each chapter and within each graphic, even if it only occurs once.
- Highlight cross-references to other parts of the book. Cross-references are the author's responsibility to check.
- Delete all paragraph numbers.
- Edit endnotes to conform to *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th edition.
- Convert footnotes to endnotes at the end of each chapter preceding the references.

Annexes and Appendixes

- Use “annex” for additional material that is placed at the end of, and is pertinent to, a specific chapter; use “appendix” for material that is placed at the end of, and is pertinent to, the entire book.
- Check the text for the correct use of “annex” and “appendix.”
- Annexes should be numbered by chapter; for example, the first annex to the text of chapter 5 would be “annex 5A”. The second annex to chapter 5 would be “annex 5B”.
- Appendixes should be lettered, not numbered. For example, the first appendix would be “appendix A,” the second appendix would be “appendix B,” and so forth. Subparts of the respective appendixes would be, for example, “appendix A.1” or “appendix B.2”.

Boxes

- Ensure that boxes are correctly numbered and appear in the proper order.
- Ensure that all boxes are referred to by number in the text.
- Convert any numbered notes to lowercase letters, and place footnote text at the base of boxes.
- Ensure that tables and figures inside boxes are titled. They should be numbered according to the following example: Figure B2.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the figure is in a box, “2.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2.1.

Figures and Tables

- Ensure that figures and tables are correctly numbered and appear in the proper order.
Note that figures and tables in text boxes are numbered and titled; see “Boxes” above for treatment.
- Point out inconsistencies between the data in figures and tables and the statements in text.
- Ensure that all figures and tables are discussed by number in the text. If any figures or tables seem superfluous to the text discussion, query the author about deleting them or moving them into an annex or appendix.
- Edit titles for sense, parallel construction, and consistent style. Make sure the titles inform about their content using the order of “What,” “Where,” and “When.”
- Ensure that axis titles, legends, and labels are present in all figures that use axes. Ensure that unit indicators are present in all other figures and that axis titles and labels use sentence-style capitalization.
- Ensure that unit indicators are provided in tables whenever appropriate.
- In each figure or table that includes nonstandard abbreviations and symbols, define the abbreviations in a general note to the figure or table. Do so even if the abbreviations have been spelled out previously in the text.
- Provide sources for all figures, maps, and tables. Request source information when such information is missing. If authors have used data to create original

figures, they should indicate the sources of the data in the source lines. If the authors have created original figures that do not use data, such as flow charts, no source line is needed. Use the author-date style for figure sources to refer readers to a publication. Make sure that the full bibliographic information is included in the reference list at the end of the chapter.

Mathematics

- If math is displayed, check that the equation numbering is consecutive.
- Ensure that all notation and typographical distinctions are consistent throughout.
- Clearly identify any potentially ambiguous characters.

Source Documentation

- Check source citations against the reference list or bibliography; query the author for any missing references or for inconsistencies between the text citation and bibliographic entry.
- Edit the bibliography or reference list for reasonable conformity to *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th edition, and the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*. Query incomplete or missing entries.
- Spot check URLs to ensure they are accurate.
- Flag any portions of the manuscript for which the author must seek permission to reprint from the original publisher. Refer to section 4 of the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*.

Lists

- Ensure consistency in the handling of lists with respect to such items as punctuation, capitalization, and numbering versus lettering.
- Use initial capitalization for the first word of each bullet.
- Use numbers instead of bullets to indicate sequences.

File Preparation

- Delete extraneous material.
- Finalize the table of contents, not including page numbers.
- Ensure that the manuscript is complete, with individual files for the front matter, chapters, and back matter and with data files by chapter folder for all figures.

APPENDIX A.2a SAMPLE STYLE SHEET (BLANK)

[Note: Copyeditors may prefer to create a style sheet in which word usage appears in alphabetical order (see **appendix A.2b** of this guide); the abbreviation list should be a separate alphabetical file.]

ABBREVIATIONS	EXAMPLES
BOLD, ITALICS, AND UNDERLINE	
BOXES, FIGURES, AND TABLES	
CAPITALIZATION	

HYPHENATION	
NUMBERS	
PUNCTUATION	
MISCELLANEOUS	
SPELLING AND USAGE	

APPENDIX A.2b SAMPLE STYLE SHEET (ACTUAL)

(adj = adjective, n = noun, um = unit modifier, v = verb)

A

adviser

B

best-practice (um)
better-informed (um)

C

climate change (n, um)
coexist
community-level (um)
constitution
cost-effective
country-specific (um)
cross-country (um)
cut-off (um)

D

data set (n)
decision maker (n)
decision-making (um)

E

e.g. (change to *for example*)
e-mail
etc. (change to *and so on*)

F

first-time (um)
follow-up (n, um)
forestland

G

gender-sensitive (um)
good-practice (um)

H

health care (adj, n)
high-profile (um)

I

i.e. (change to *that is*)
ill-defined (um)

J

joint venture (n)
judgment

K

know-how (n)

L

landholder (n, um)
landholding (n, um)
landowner
land ownership
land use (n, um)
large-scale (um)
long-held (um)
low-income (um)

M

medium-size (adj)
microbusiness
middle-income (um)
mid-level
much-needed (um)

N

nondocumentary

O

overreport (v)

P

pasture user association
policy maker (n)
postwar
precoded
private sector (n, um)
pro-poor
public sector (n, um)

Q

quasi-professional

R

risk taker (n)

risk taking (n)
risk-taking (adj)

S

school-age (adj)
secondhand
self-financing
semiskilled
socioeconomic
start up (v)
start-up (adj, n)

T

time frame (n)
tradable
trade-off

U

underreporting
underused
under way
United States (n)
U.S. (adj)

V

value added tax

W

website (n)
well-designed (um)

X

x-axis
Xerox
x-ray (v)
X-ray (n)

Y

y-axis
year-on-year (adj)

Z

zero-sum (adj)

Headings: A-level and b-level headings are freestanding with headline-style caps. C-level headings are freestanding with sentence-style caps.

In-text lists: (a), (b), (c), not (1), (2), (3)

Terms and words used as words: *Italicize.*

Numbers: Spell out one through nine; use figures for 10 and up. Use figures for physical quantities and percentages. Use comma for thousands: 4,000.

Author-date citations: Follow World Bank style. Thus, author-date citations without an accompanying discussion should be included in text, not in the notes. Single author: (Smith 2000); Smith (2000). Two authors: (Smith and Jones 2000); Smith and Jones (2000). Three authors: (Smith, Jones, and Brown 2000); Smith, Jones, and Brown (2000). Four or more authors: (Smith and others 2000); Smith and others (2000). Use first initial (or, if necessary, first and middle initials or full first name) to differentiate authors with the same name: (K. Smith 2000; R. Smith 2000). When there are several parenthetical citations, alphabetize them and separate them with a semicolon: (Adams 2003; Bayer 2000, 2002; Crawford 1999; Johnson and others 2001; K. Smith 2000, 2003).

Quotations: Quotations must include a page number in author-date citation. Style is (Smith 2000, 23) or Smith (2000, 23)

References: Use current World Bank style as follows:

Book: Moore, Mark. 1996. *Creating Public Value*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Chapter in a book: Rezende, Fernando, and José Roberto Afonso. 2006. "The Brazilian Federation: Facts, Challenges, and Prospects." In *Federalism and Economic Reform: International Perspectives*, edited by Jessica Wallack and T. N. Srinivasan, 143–88. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press.

Journal article: Alok, V. N. 2004. "State Finance Commissions in Indian: An Assessment." *Indian Journal of Public Administration* 50 (3): 716–32.

Conference paper: Alok, V. N., and Laveesh Bhandari. 2004. "Rating the Policy and Functional Environment of PRIs in Different States of India: A Concept Paper." Paper presented at the Fifth Roundtable of Ministers in Charge of Panchayati Raj, Srinagar, India, October 28–29.

Working paper: Jin, Hehui, Yingyi Qian, and Barry R. Weingast. 1999. "Regional Decentralization and Fiscal Incentives: Federalism, Chinese Style." Working Paper SWP-99-013, Stanford University, Stanford, CA.

APPENDIX A.3 MICROSOFT WORD FORMATTING INSTRUCTIONS

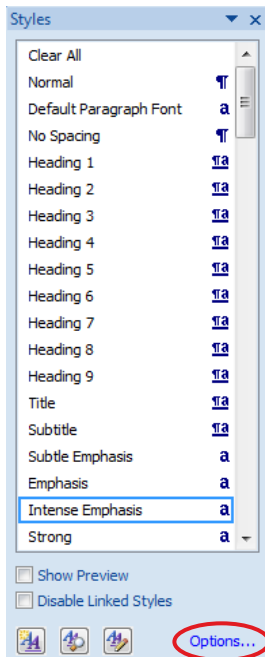
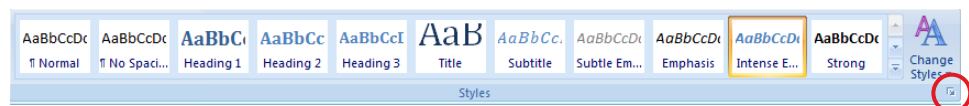
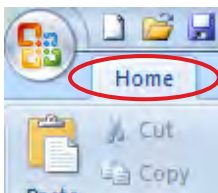
Content reaches users in various ways, many of them electronic and mobile. ECRPK's job is to process and format the content to make sure this happens quickly and seamlessly. We ask that you take 10 minutes to learn to apply styles to just a few elements in your document. The few additional mouse clicks on your part will considerably accelerate content processing by us and our vendors.

HOW TO APPLY STYLES TO YOUR DOCUMENT

Note that the process described below can take place as you write (starting with the very first word you type), in the middle of the writing process, or after you're done writing. The steps below assume you're already done with the writing process [and if you're a copyeditor, they assume the author is done], but they can easily be applied to other situations.

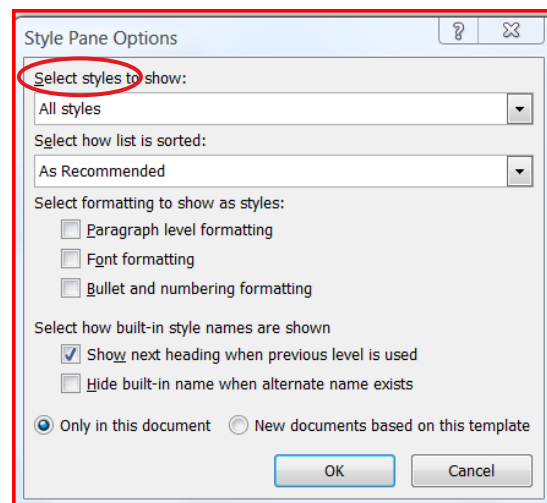
1. Open your Word document. Your content usually has a title, headings, figures and tables, and of course, paragraphs of regular text. We would like you to apply styles to just a few items. The bulk of your document, regular text, does NOT need to be styled.
2. Open the Styles pane and keep it open while you work.

With the **Home** tab of the Microsoft Office ribbon selected, click on the "maximizing" arrow in the bottom right corner of the Styles pane.

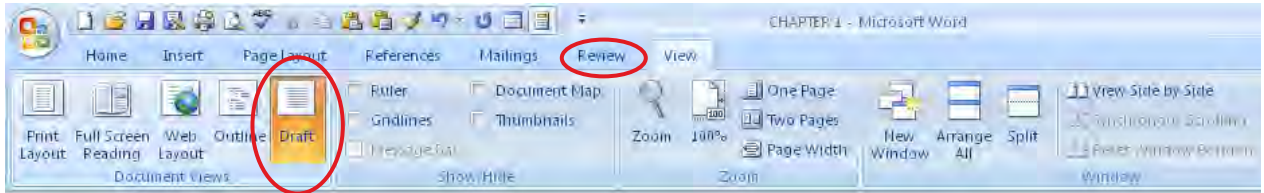


This will open a Styles pane, which looks like the image at left.

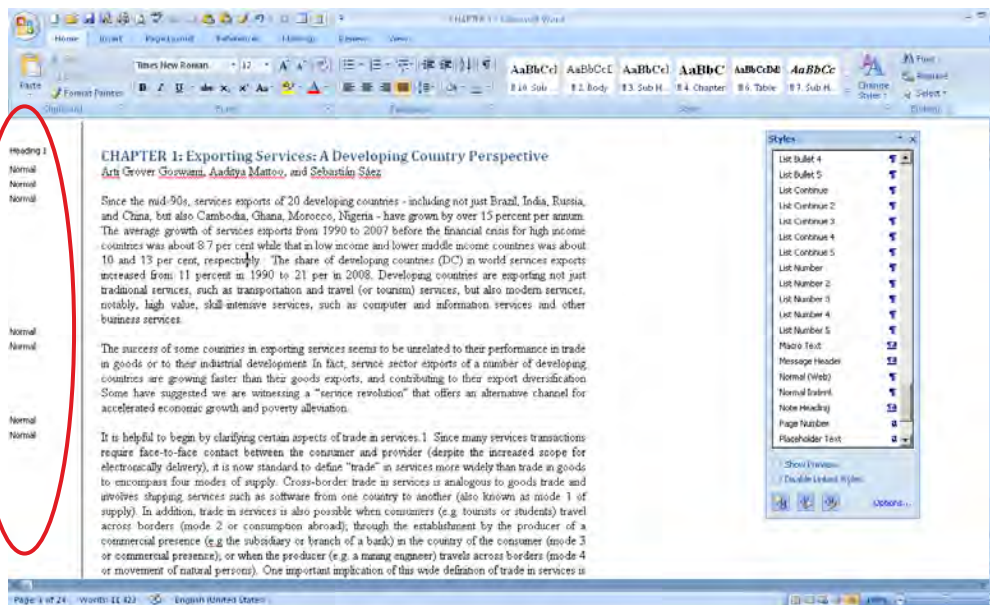
In the Styles pane, click on "Options," which will open a dialog window, shown below. In the dialog window, below "Select styles to show:", choose "All styles". Click OK.



3. Check that you are in **Draft** view. Working in Draft view will allow you to view the styles already applied to your document and the new styles that you will apply to it. To work in Draft view, select "**Draft**" on the "**View**" ribbon.

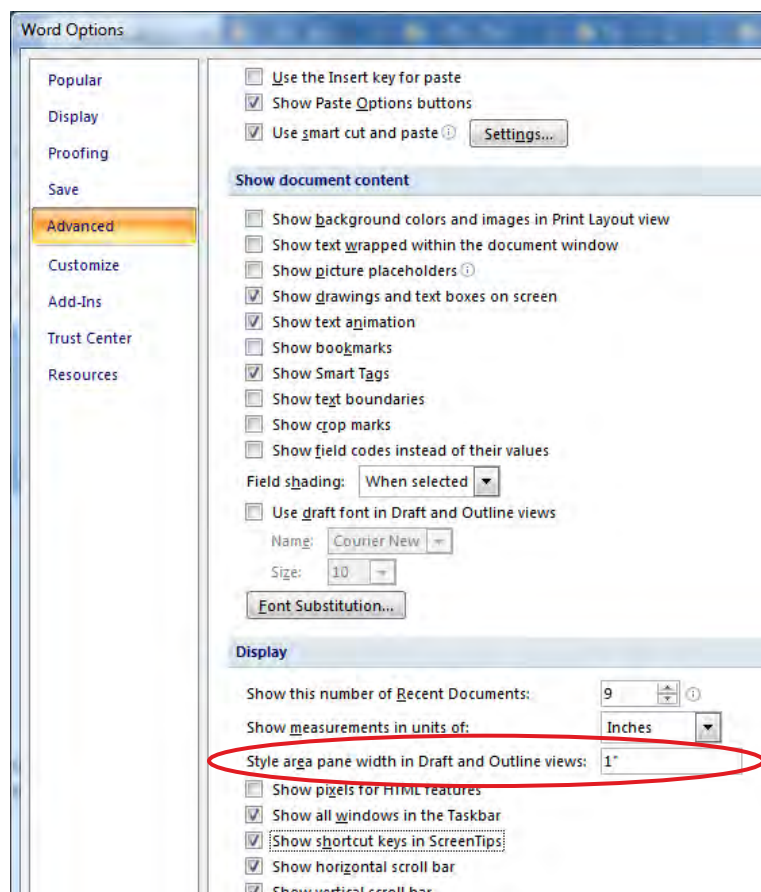


You should now see the **style area pane** on the left-hand side of your screen. If you do not, see page 92 of this guide.





If you do not see the style area pane on the left-hand side of your screen, you may need to adjust your Word options. To do this, click on the round Office button at top left, then Word Options > Advanced. In the field labeled “**Style area pane width in Draft and Outline views:**”, enter “1”.



Don't worry if your figures “disappear in this view”; it's normal. When you would like to view and work with any figures in your document, simply revert to Print Layout view. You'll still see the Styles pane on the right.

- With the style area pane visible on the left, and the Styles pane on the right, apply styles as you work through your document.

Here are the items to watch out for in your document and the styles that should be applied to them:

ITEM IN YOUR DOCUMENT	STYLE TO APPLY	NOTES
Title (of your book, chapter, or paper)	Title	
Subtitle (of your book, chapter, or paper)	Subtitle	
Abstract (of your book or chapter)	Message Header	
Section headings	Heading 1 to 5	Please apply the appropriate styles to the headings, Heading 1 being the highest level (i.e., the first section level in a document, e.g., Introduction, Conclusion). All subsections below this level begin with lower-level headings (e.g., H2 and below).
Block quotes	Block Text	

In your document, highlight the item to style and then click the desired style in the Styles pane on the right of your screen. *Some styles will change your text color to blue; but don't worry. This has no bearing on the final product. If it bothers you, feel free to change the text color to black manually.*

After applying the style, you will see that the style is now indicated in the style area pane on the left of your screen, next to the item that you just highlighted and styled.

Applying the above-listed styles to these key elements will ensure that ECRPK will interpret the structure of your document correctly.

Sample text showing all the styles listed above:

The Title of My Chapter

Subtitle

This is the abstract that I am providing with my chapter. It should be about 100 words long. Providing this abstract makes my content more discoverable in online repositories.

This Is a Level 1 Heading

This is regular text, so it doesn't need a style.

Level 2 Heading

More regular text.

A block quote is a long excerpt from another source. Here I'll pretend that I'm quoting from Jane Austen. Her writings are no longer protected by copyright, so I do not need to secure permission. Normally, a quote of about four lines (or longer) would require permission. Anything less than that is considered "fair use" by most copyright experts.

Regular text continues, with no style applied.

APPENDIX A.4 DOCUMENT CLEANUP INSTRUCTIONS FOR COPYEDITORS

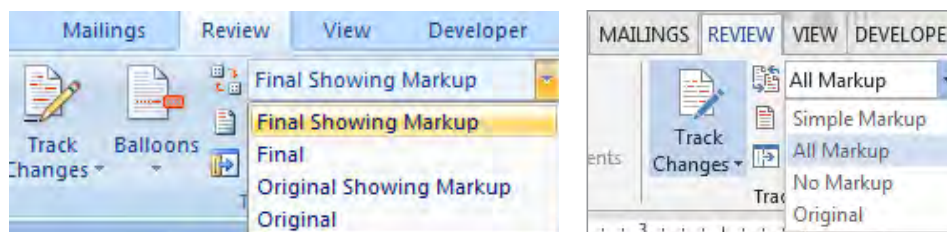
Copyeditors should start with the redlined document, work with tracking off, and end with a clean document.

WHAT IS CLEANUP, AND WHY IS IT NEEDED?

Cleanup is the production task that takes place after author review of an edited manuscript. It transforms the author-reviewed file into a clean, tagged version that is ready for typesetting. Tracked changes have to be dealt with and cleaned up, and tags have to be put in place to convey to the typesetter the heading hierarchy and the placement of boxes, figures, and tables.

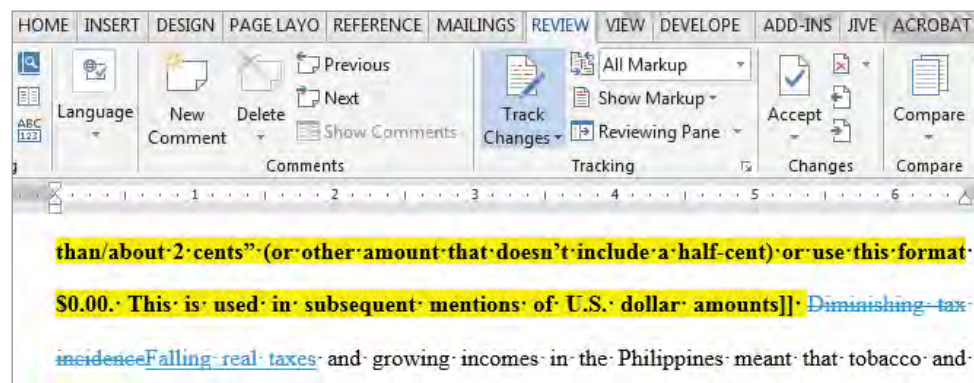
1. First, the Basics

A clean document is one that has no redlining. Note that eliminating redlining is not the same as hiding it. When you send a clean document to ECRPK, no redlining should be visible when the review mode is set to “Final Showing Markup” or, in newer versions, “All Markup”:



2. What you need to do

- Here is a document reviewed and sent back by the author:



- Turn tracking off; it will only get in the way at this point.

- Highlight the fragment or sentence that has redlining:

even in cases in which children do have access to education facilities, the quality of education is often poor (Hanushek and Woessmann 2007) ~~[[Is 2005 meant, per References?]]~~. This had been increasingly apparent in the international learning test scores, in which most students from

- Accept the change (Word 2007 will move you to the next redlined fragment automatically; you should choose the dropdown option to accept and stay put) and see how the fragment looks:

even in cases in which children do have access to education facilities, the quality of education is often poor (Hanushek and Woessmann 2007)). This had been increasingly apparent in the

- It does not look good. Delete the extra space and closing parenthesis; unbold the period:

even in cases in which children do have access to education facilities, the quality of education is often poor (Hanushek and Woessmann 2007). This had been increasingly apparent in the

- Now it looks good. Move on to the next redline you see. Repeat until you are done.

3. What if the document comes back from the author with some queries still in it?

We like our documents to be query-free when we send them to the typesetter.

- Reevaluate queries that have been ignored with this in mind.
- Depending on how the author has responded to other queries, you may be able to eliminate others.
- Consider whether the query was important to begin with and whether it can be deleted.
- Leave only queries that you consider critical; delete the rest.
- And remember, we don't want to see redlining showing those deletions.

4. What if you must retain some queries for page proofs?

OK, so you've decided that a few queries are important. These will be moved to the margins of the proof by the typesetter, and in most cases there will not be an arrow pointing to the location.

Therefore you must reword remaining queries so that they make sense when set in the margin:

This works in Word:

The recession of 1992–2002 **[[AQ: Please confirm years.]]** was . . .

It does not work *at all* when it sits next to the paragraph; the typesetter may not even place it next to the right one. Reword it:

[[AQ: Please check the dates of the recession; 1992–2002 can't possibly be accurate.]]

If any queries remain unresolved, move them from the text to Comments so the production editor and typesetter can see them easily.

5. What else?

- Some authors respond to edits by using the Comments feature in Word. Review the contents of these comment balloons, deal with the feedback, and delete the balloons.
- Add heading styles to the headings if you skipped this task during the editing phase.

Add placeholders for figures and tables if they're in separate files or if even if they are in the main file **<<Insert figure 2.1 about here>>**

- Insert **<<text box>>** and **<<end text box>>** tags for text boxes.
- Before you send the “clean” file to the EXTOP production editor, go through it to make sure there's no redlining. **A clean document is one that has no redlining.**

APPENDIX A.5 FREQUENTLY OVERLOOKED STYLE RULES FOR EDITORS AND PROOFREADERS

FOR EDITORS:

- Accept all tracked changes before working on the document.
- In each chapter, spell out each acronym and abbreviation at first occurrence, followed by the abbreviation in parentheses, even if it is used only once.

FOR EDITORS AND PROOFREADERS:

- **Ensure that all country, territory, economy, and city names are used correctly (*consult appendix C in this guide regarding correct use in tables and figures, and subsequent use in text*):**

Examples

Côte d'Ivoire (never "Ivory Coast"; note circumflex)

Bolivia, Plurinational State of (in titles)

Colombia (not "Columbia")

Democratic Republic of Congo (not "Democratic Republic of the Congo")

Gambia, The

Hong Kong SAR, China (no parentheses around "China"; never refer to it as a "country"—"economy" is acceptable)

Iran, Islamic Republic of

Korea, Democratic People's Republic of (never "North Korea")

Korea, Republic of (never "South Korea")

Kyrgyz Republic (not "Kyrgyzstan")

Lao People's Democratic Republic (never "Laos")

Macao SAR, China (no parentheses around "China"; never refer to it as a "country"—"economy" is acceptable)

Macedonia, former Yugoslav Republic of

Mumbai (do not use "Bombay")

Myanmar (never "Burma," except in historical contexts)

Russian Federation (not "Russia Federation")

São Tomé and Príncipe (no short form; note diacritical marks)

South Sudan (not "Republic of South Sudan")

Taiwan, China (never refer to it as a "country"—"economy" is acceptable)

United States (use U.S. only as an adjective)

Venezuela, República Bolivariana de (yes, you need all the words!)

West Bank and Gaza (refer to it as an "economy," not a "country"; never refer to it as "Palestinian Territory/ies")

- Policy maker and decision maker (two words)
- Indexes and appendixes (not indices and appendices); you may use letters to designate appendixes to the whole book (as opposed to chapter annexes; numbers are permitted; consistency is the priority)
- Serial comma
- Link (not linkage)
- Use an en dash (not hyphen) for page and date ranges
- Date ranges: 1982–83, 1982–2002 (not 1982–3, 1982–02)
- Use the en dash correctly in compounds: World Bank–supported (not “World Bank-supported”)
- Make sure each table and each figure has a source; query if a source is missing.
- Ensure that box, figure, and table notes are not part of the overall footnote scheme; ensure that the markers are letters, not numbers.
- Ensure that no country maps of India have been included, other than as part of the region or world (13.25).

APPENDIX A.6 AUTHOR'S CHECKLIST FOR FORMAL PUBLISHING WITH ECRPK

This document was developed for use by authors, but it will also be helpful to copyeditors who perform some of these tasks.

It is our goal to provide you with a publishing process that is as efficient, cost-effective, and quality assured as possible. You are an essential partner in this process. As you prepare to submit your manuscript to us, please ensure the following:

- (1) It is complete, with all elements of the front matter, main text, and back matter.
- (2) It meets all of the submission requirements specified in this checklist.

This checklist summarizes the minimum mandatory requirements for submission to the automated publication workflow. The links indicate resources available on ECRPK's intranet site.

STEP 1: Get permissions and clearances and keep them for your records; provide a copy to ECRPK.

- Obtain clearances from the World Bank's Cartography Unit for any maps in the manuscript; provide a copy to ECRPK. Send map requests to the Cartography Unit at mapdesigncart@worldbank.org; copy Bruno Bonansea, bbonansea@worldbank.org (202-458-9329).
- Assess whether permissions are needed (refer to ECRPK's guidelines) to reprint any material from non-Bank sources, including text as well as graphical elements such as maps, figures, tables, and photographs. Secure written permission for text and graphics, excluding photographs, where necessary; refer to our sample Request for Permissions letter. A separate sample letter specifically for permission to use photographs is available from the same guidelines page.
- Secure copyright releases from contributing non-Bank authors (see our sample copyright assignment form for books).

STEP 2: Finalize your manuscript

- Provide sources for figures, maps, and tables, as needed. If authors have used World Bank data to create original figures or tables, they should indicate the sources of the data in the source lines. If the authors have used non-World Bank sources, they should specify them in the source line and obtain permissions as needed (see Step 1). If the authors have created original figures or tables that do not use data, such as flow charts, they should not provide source lines.
- Check that all boxes, figures, and tables are mentioned in the text.
- Check that all references are complete and accurate (names of authors, title of publication, name of publisher, date of publication, and other essential information).

- ❑ Place notes and references at the end of each chapter, not at the back of the book. World Bank Studies (WBS) differ and typically have a single reference list at the end of the volume; the notes remain with any respective chapters.
- ❑ Delete any comments in the Word files, and ensure that no tracked changes remain in the files.
- ❑ Assemble the front matter: title page; table of contents; foreword and preface (optional); about the authors or editors (names and affiliations/bios up to 100 words, or for edited volumes, list of contributors with affiliations); acknowledgments; abbreviations (optional).
- ❑ Assemble the chapters—chapter text, annexes (if applicable), notes, and references—and name the files by chapter number. Examples: 00 Front Matter .docx, 01 Ch_1 Family Obligations.docx, 09 Back Matter.docx.
- ❑ Assemble the back matter: any appendixes, and name the files by appendix letter.
- ❑ Assemble appropriate source files (data or art) for figures, maps, and images:
 - Excel files for dense figures (for example, scatter plots with tightly grouped data points and line graphs with significantly overlapping data lines). Individual files should be clearly titled by chapter and figure number.
 - High-resolution files (300 dpi or greater in eps) of figures derived from Stata or similar programs
 - Map files (high-resolution files/300 dpi in jpg, eps, or vector)
 - Any source math or tables, if these were provided as pictures and are not editable.

For more information, please see our Manuscript Development Resources on the intranet.

- ❑ Write an abstract of the full study (350 words). Chapter abstracts are no longer required.
- ❑ Identify a suitable cover photo (high resolution/300 dpi), preferably with horizontal or landscape orientation. If the resolution is low or the image is otherwise unsuitable for publication for technical reasons, ECRPK can conduct photo research for an additional fee.

Note: The World Bank Photo Library has images available at no cost. Searching the Photo Library can be a slow process; for a faster option, go to <http://www.flickr.com/photos/worldbank>.

STEP 3: Submit the following to ECRPK once you have the full package in print and in electronic format in Box or via email:

- ❑ Authorization Form completed and signed
- ❑ Marketing and Metadata Questionnaire completed and signed; this questionnaire is not required for WBS
- ❑ Decision Memo signed
- ❑ One aggregate Word file of the entire manuscript, for cataloging by the Library of Congress

- ❑ Manuscript disaggregated into separate Word files and clearly titled by front matter, chapter number, and back matter. For WBS, provide a single consolidated file.
- ❑ Biographical sketch of authors
- ❑ Abstract of the full study
- ❑ Excel files clearly titled for dense figures
- ❑ High-resolution files (eps, jpg, or vector) for maps and images
- ❑ Cover photo (high resolution/300 dpi).

For questions, please contact your acquisitions editor. **Thank You!**

APPENDIX A.7 MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION GUIDELINES

These guidelines are intended for use by the editors whom ECRPK hires, as well as for those whom authoring units hire directly. All copyeditors in ECRPK's approved list are able to perform these tasks.

Helpful resources for authoring units are available on the World Bank's intranet/ECRPK:

- List of approved editors
- *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*
- Microsoft Word Formatting Instructions
- Excel Figure Preparation Guidelines
- Sample Request for Permissions Letter
- Sample Copyright Assignment Form (to be provided to non-Bank authors)

A. PARTS OF THE BOOK

World Bank books may contain any or all of the following elements in the following order:

Front Matter

Half-title page

Series or cover information, list of prior publications, or blank

Title page

Copyright page (*ECRPK will add this page and will include illustration and photo credits at the bottom of the page.*)

Contents

Foreword (written by someone other than the author; optional)

Preface (written by the author; optional)

Acknowledgments (if not part of the preface; optional)

About the Authors/Editors or List of Contributors

Introduction, Overview, or Executive Summary (*We recommend that these elements appear in the main text rather than in the front matter.*)

Abbreviations

Text

Introduction, overview, executive summary, or chapter 1

Subsequent chapters with their respective annexes, notes, and references

Note: Include any text for part openers, if applicable.

Back Matter

Appendixes (optional)

B. DRAFTING THE MANUSCRIPT

1. Collect all materials for your manuscript, including boxes, figures, maps, math, tables, and references.
2. Consider clarity and electronic searchability when writing chapter titles; section headings; figure, map, and table titles; and appendix titles.
 - Ensure that readers have sufficient information to make sense of these elements if they are viewed apart from the book or chapter: for example, “Results of Regression Analysis” will not adequately inform prospective readers of the content of a table or appendix.
 - Use descriptive titles that cover What + Where + When. Doing so will ensure that important details like main topics, keywords, country or region names, and years of relevance (where appropriate) are featured in the title and catch readers’ attention.
3. Provide shorter paragraphs and more subheads for improved readability of e-books.
4. Place notes and references at the end of each chapter, following the chapter text and any chapter annexes, so that each chapter is as self-contained as possible.

C. CHECKLIST FOR PREPARING THE MANUSCRIPT FOR SUBMISSION TO ECRPK

1. Ensure that all Comments in the draft and reviewed Word files have been addressed, and delete any remaining Comments so that the files are clean.
2. Review all tracked changes, and “accept” them or revise the text as necessary so that the files are clean.
3. Consider using the Microsoft Word Formatting Instructions and Excel Figure Formatting Guidelines provided by ECRPK to facilitate the processing of the manuscript content.
4. Ensure that the manuscript is complete:
 - Front matter, including the title page, table of contents, foreword, preface, acknowledgments, author/editor biographical information (*not all of these elements are necessarily included in the front matter of every book*)
 - Chapters, including any chapter annexes
 - Back matter, such as appendixes.
5. Provide a book abstract.
6. Follow the approved World Bank Country, Economy, and Territory Names list in appendix C of the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide* when designating these entities. Put them in alphabetical order in the text and tables, unless another ranking is appropriate.
7. Secure written permission for the following non–World Bank materials:
 - Use of a **substantial** amount of copyrighted material of any kind
 - Use of any tables or figures containing **pictorial elements** (for example, flow charts, art, photographs, or maps)
 - Use of **any art, photographs, or maps.**

Written permission is generally not required for the following elements:

The doctrine of fair use allows authors to quote from other authors' work or to reproduce **small amounts of graphic material based on data, excluding pictorial elements**, for purposes of review or criticism or to illustrate or buttress their own points. Authors who follow fair use should ensure that they accurately transcribe any material, give credit to their sources, and do not quote out of context. Additional information is provided on ECRPK's intranet site and in *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th Edition, 4.77.

D. PREPARING THE ABSTRACT

Please submit an abstract of the full manuscript (350 words). Chapter abstracts are no longer required.

E. CHECKING THE STRUCTURE

1. Ensure that all sections and elements listed in the table of contents are included in the manuscript.
2. Check that all heading levels are correct, and check that all sections and subsections of the text follow logically.
3. Check that each text reference to a table, box, figure, or map uses the correct number of the table, box, figure, or map, and that any reference to another chapter or section uses the correct number or title. Do not include any cross-references to pages, since the page numbers will change during layout. With a few exceptions, do not include cross-references to sections numbers, since these will be deleted.

F. COLLECTING AND NAMING THE FILES

Text files

File format. Provide the manuscript text in Word. To avoid delays in the editing process, follow the Microsoft Word Formatting Instructions provided by ECRPK.

File names. Include the chapter number and title, or the appendix letter and title, in the file name so that the text is kept in the proper order and no pieces are overlooked.

Examples

00 Front Matter.docx
01 Ch_1 Family Obligations.docx
02 Ch_2 Health Insurance.docx
08 App_A Welfare Regimes.docx

File organization. To control file size and facilitate the editing process, use separate files for the front matter, each chapter, each appendix, and any back matter.

Annexes for chapters and appendixes for complete book. Appendixes to individual chapters are called *annexes* to avoid confusion with appendixes to the book as a whole. The first annex to chapter 7, for example, would be titled "Annex 7A" and the second annex, "Annex 7B". The first appendix to a book would be titled "Appendix A" and the second appendix, "Appendix B". In addition, each annex and appendix should have a descriptive text heading.

Boxes

File format. Provide text boxes in Word as part of the main text. Avoid using Word text boxes; instead, type <<text box>> at the start of the material and <<end text box>> at the end.

Graphics. Assign a number and title to every figure or table within a box.

- In a text box, number any figures and tables according to the following example: **Figure B2.1.1**, in which “**B**” indicates that the figure is in a box, “**2.1**” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2.1. If a figure in a box comprises multiple panels, and these panels are referenced in the text, they should be referred to as “panel a”, “panel b”, and so forth. Each panel within the figure should be given a subtitle that includes a letter (for example, “a”, “b”, and so forth) followed by a descriptive heading.
- In a chapter annex, number any figures or tables in a box according to the following example: **Figure B2A.1.1**, in which “**B**” indicates that the figure is in a box, “**2A.1**” identifies the box number (it is the first box in annex A of chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2A.1. Figures with multiple panels should be treated as indicated in the preceding bullet, with a letter and a text heading.

Length. Limit the number of words in text boxes to a maximum of 700 words.

Notes. Use a self-contained lettering system for any notes within boxes to avoid confusion with notes in the text. Superscript lowercase letters are used within the text of the box. The notes section pertinent to the box is placed at the end of the box.

Quantity. Keep the quantity of boxes to a minimum so that they do not overshadow the text itself.

Sources. In citing sources of information, specify the author’s last name and the year of publication. Place complete bibliographic information in the reference list for the chapter. Source lines are not required if the box is the original work of the author.

Text references. Make sure that each box is mentioned, by number, in the text.

Titles. Keep titles informative and parallel in structure and tone.

Figures

General

- Check that every figure has a figure number, title, and source.
- Cite every figure by number in the text.
- Provide Excel or other data files, wherever possible, and for all dense figures.
- For all figures with axes, indicate the unit of measurement for each axis.
- For line graphs and bar charts, use legends (figure keys) to identify each line, bar, or bar segment.
- For pie charts and scatterplots, use labels to identify each segment or specific data points.

Abbreviations and symbols. Define all nonstandard abbreviations and symbols used in a figure, including as part of the title or unit indicator, in a note to the figure.

Country and economy names. Check that names follow the approved World Bank listing provided in the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*, appendix C.

Data. When you provide your data for your figures (in a separate folder), make sure that the data files and individual workbook sheets have the same numbering as the figures they represent and are clearly titled and ordered. For example:

- 01 Ch_1 Figures.xls
- 02 Ch_2 Figures.xls
- 08 App_A Figures.xls

Make sure that data workbooks are cleaned up and that no extra sheets are transmitted, or highlight the appropriate data if you do not want to remove sheets.

Notes. Ensure that all figure notes show in the text file; check the data files, and if necessary, copy any notes from the data files into the Word files.

Numbering. Use the two-digit style. For example:

- **“figure O.1”** is the first figure in an overview; **“figure I.1”** is the first figure in an unnumbered introduction.
- **“figure 1.1”** is the first figure in chapter 1.
- **“figure 2A.1”** is the first figure in the first annex to chapter 2; **“figure 2B.1”** is the first figure in the second annex to chapter 2.
- **“figure A.1”** is the first figure in appendix A; **“figure B.1”** is the first figure in appendix B.

Refer to the preceding “Boxes” section for information on numbering figures that appear in boxes.

Permissions. Check that you have obtained permissions in writing, where needed. A sample letter for text and graphics, excluding photographs, and a sample letter specifically for photographs are available on ECRPK’s Manuscript Development Resources intranet page.

Sources

- Use author-date style to refer readers to a publication. Make sure that the full bibliographic information is included in the reference list at the end of each chapter.
- The World Bank’s Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.
- Sources for figures and tables are now treated the same as sources for text. Content including data that are not original needs a source citation.

Examples

- **If figures are original and use text and not data**, for example, flow charts, then do not list a source because the publication itself is the original source.
- **If figures use World Bank data**, then cite the data source as specifically as possible, for example, “World Development Indicators Database.” In the absence of this information, provide a note specifying “World Bank data” as the source. Do not use “Authors” or “Author’s compilation.” It is acceptable to start the source line with “An elaboration of...” or “based on...” or similar language.
- **If figures use non–World Bank data owned by a third party**, then use a standard source line.
- **If figures are (a) owned by a third party (not the World Bank) and (b) require permission**, then use the following line: “Source: [author-date citation], ©[copyright owner]. Reproduced, with permission, from [copyright owner]; further permission required for reuse.”

- Provide complete source information in the reference list or bibliography.
- Refer to *Chicago* chapter 4 for more complete information about rights and permissions, and to *Chicago* chapter 15 for information about documentation.

Titles. Check that every figure has a descriptive title that covers What + Where + When.

- Be aware that the figure will be electronically searchable and might be viewed apart from the text in an electronic iteration.
- Avoid using ellipses or dashes to connect one figure title to the next.
- If a figure is divided into parts, make sure that each subpart is lettered and has a title (for example, “a. Texttexttext”).
- Check that the title appears in both the data file (Excel, or eps for Stata) and the Word file.
- Avoid using the World Bank’s regional abbreviations (AFR or SSA, EAP, ECA, LAC, MNA or MENA, and SAR).

Text references. Make sure that each figure is discussed, by number, in the text.

Unit modifier. Label each axis, and provide unit indicators. For a figure that does not use axes, provide a unit indicator for the figure as a whole.

Maps

Creation and approval. Send requests to create maps to the World Bank’s Cartography Unit at mapdesigncart@worldbank.org; copy Bruno Bonansea, bbonansea@worldbank.org (202-458-9329).

- Be aware that high-resolution images are needed; as a rule, images from the Internet do not have adequate resolution and need to be re-created. Permission for non-World Bank maps may be required.
- Cartography will provide an identifying IBRD number for each map; this number should not be deleted from the files supplied to ECRPK.
- If the maps have been created by another source, then secure the Cartography Unit’s clearance. All maps must be approved by the Cartography Unit before delivery to ECRPK.

File format. Provide maps as separate Illustrator/eps files, as well as low-resolution PDFs. Note that maps provided as screen shots will need to be re-created.

File organization and naming. Place any maps in a separate Maps folder with subfolders by chapter. Identify each map by number both in the file name and in the document.

Examples

Map 1_1.eps
 Map 1_2.eps
 Map 2_1.eps
 Map 2_2.eps
 Map A_1.eps

Numbering convention. Label and number maps separately from figures, and use the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables.

Permissions. Secure permission from the originator to use maps taken from copyrighted sources.

Sources. Check that every map has a source line.

Text callouts. Ensure that every map has a corresponding text callout.

Math

File format. Show mathematical equations in the Word text files of the manuscript or provide them as PDFs in separate files. This is to ensure accuracy as the files are processed.

File organization. If the math is provided in a separate Math folder from the manuscript, include a picture of the math in the manuscript file for reference.

File names. If a file contains multiple equations, include the chapter number or appendix letter in the file name, and label each equation by number within the document.

Examples

01 Ch_1 Math.docx
02 Ch_2 Math.docx
08 App_A Math.docx

If each file consists of only one equation, identify the equation by number in the file name and in the document.

Examples

Equation 1_1.xlsx
Equation 1_2.xlsx
Equation 2_1.xlsx
Equation A_1.xlsx

References

Cited works. Delete any entries not actually cited from the reference list.

Completeness. Check that all references are complete and accurate, with each author's name, title of publication, name of publisher, date of publication, and other essential information included.

Organized by chapter. Ensure that all references have been organized by chapter and are appended to the end of each chapter.

Tables

Abbreviations and symbols. All nonstandard abbreviations and symbols that are used in a table, including as part of the title or unit indicator, need to be defined in a note to the table.

Blank cells. Avoid leaving blank cells within a table. Instead, use one of the symbols below.

— Not available
n.a. Not applicable
.. Negligible
0 Zero

Column headings. Provide a heading for every table column.

Editability. Make sure that the tables in the manuscript files are provided in editable formats rather than as pictures.

Numbering. Use the two-digit style. For example:

- **"Table O.1"** is the first table in an overview; **"table I.1"** is the first table in an unnumbered introduction.
- **"Table 1.1"** is the first table in chapter 1; **"table 2A.1"** is the first table in the first annex to chapter 2; **"table A.1"** is the first table in appendix A.

Refer to the “Boxes” section for information on numbering tables that appear in boxes.

Sources. Sources for tables are now treated the same as sources for text. Content including data that are not original needs a source citation.

- Use *author-date* style to refer readers to a publication. Make sure that the full bibliographic information is included in the reference list at the end of each chapter.
- The World Bank’s Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.

Examples

If tables are original and use text and not data, then do not list a source because the publication itself is the original source.

If tables use World Bank data, then cite the data source as specifically as possible, for example, “World Development Indicators Database.” In the absence of this information, provide a note specifying “World Bank data” as the source. It is acceptable to start the source line with “An elaboration of...” or “based on...” or similar language. Do not use “Authors” or “Author’s compilation.”

If tables use non-World Bank data owned by a third party, then use a standard source line.

If tables are (a) owned by a third party (not the World Bank) and (b) require permission, then use the following line: “Source: [author-date citation], ©[copyright owner]. Reproduced, with permission, from [copyright owner]; further permission required for reuse.”

Text references. Make sure that each table is discussed, by number, in the text.

- Place tables not directly pertinent to the text but of interest to readers in an annex to the chapter or an appendix to the book.

Titles. Check that every table has a descriptive title that covers What + Where + When.

- Be aware that the table will be electronically searchable and might be viewed apart from the text in an electronic iteration.
- Avoid using ellipses or dashes to connect one table title to the next.
- Avoid using the World Bank’s regional abbreviations (AFR or SSA, EAP, ECA, LAC, MNA or MENA, and SAR).

Unit indicators. Provide a unit indicator for the table as a whole or for individual rows and columns when more than one unit is used in the table.

APPENDIX A.8a BASIC EDITORIAL QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLIST

This checklist is for books in the Directions in Development series or any special project that will be copyedited after the Editorial Quality Control stage.

A. GENERAL TASKS

1. Insert necessary author queries into the Word files using the **Comments function**.
2. Apply any missing styles to headings to indicate their appropriate levels based on existing styles or tags provided in the manuscript. Make sure the heading hierarchy does not move from A and B heads to run-in headings, skipping C heads.
3. Ensure that the front matter elements are in the following order; if they are not, rearrange to comply as needed: half-title page, title page, copyright page, contents, foreword (optional), preface (optional), acknowledgments (optional), about the authors or editors or list of contributors (optional), executive summary (optional), abbreviations.
4. Compile the list of abbreviations used throughout the publication, if not provided by authors. If an abbreviations list already exists, verify that all abbreviations used in the manuscript appear in the list and insert any that are missing. The abbreviations list in the front matter should be in alphabetical order by abbreviation or acronym rather than by the spelled-out text.
5. If cover images, figures, maps, or other graphics files appear to be low-resolution, in each case check the image size to see if the resolution can be improved. If it can be improved, do so; if it cannot, insert queries to the authors and production editor that higher-resolution files are needed (for example, "[[AQ: The resolution of this image is too low to print well. Please provide a high-resolution image.]]").
6. Do not query missing source lines in boxes, figures, maps, and tables.

B. OVERALL CONSISTENCY

1. If a part or chapter opens without a heading, query the missing heading; do not insert "Introduction" (for example, "[[AQ: For the purposes of electronic format, all text needs to start with a heading. Please provide a heading for this text.]]").
2. Follow World Bank conventions for specifying country and economy names. Do not change the order of the countries as provided in the manuscript.
Important: Do not replace "Korea" with "Democratic Republic of Korea" without reading the text carefully; in most cases, "Korea" should be "Republic of Korea." Pay particular attention to China; Hong Kong SAR, China; Macao SAR, China; and Taiwan, China, which are economies and should not be referred to as countries.

3. If any of the endnotes contain ONLY author-date citations, put them in body text and remove the endnote.

C. BOXES

1. Ensure that boxes are correctly numbered and appear in the proper order.
2. Ensure that all boxes are referred to by number in the text; the in-text reference should be lowercase (for example, "As shown in box 1.1"). If a callout is missing, insert a query (for example, "[AQ: Box 1.1 is not mentioned in the text. Please insert a text callout to the box.]"). Do not request a "citation" because it can be misunderstood to mean source information.
3. Convert any numbered notes to lowercase letters, and place footnote text at the base of boxes. **These notes should not be part of the chapter endnote sequence.**
4. Ensure that all figures and tables inside boxes are numbered and titled. In the text box, number the figures and tables according to the following example for the first figure in box 2.1: "Figure B2.1.1". In the listing of this box figure in the "Figures" section of the table of contents, number as "B2.1.1".

D. FIGURES AND TABLES

1. Keep the figures in place in the text and insert typesetter instructions directly below each figure in the Word file; do not set up a separate figures file by chapter.
2. Ensure that all figures and tables are correctly numbered and appear in the proper order. (Note that tables and figures in text boxes must be numbered according to within-box numbering rules and titled.)
3. Insert a query if there is a discrepancy between the figure in the Word file and any corresponding Excel or Stata file.
4. Ensure that every part of a figure, such as a panel, is identified by a letter and text title.
5. Ensure that every cell in a table has content; insert queries where any cells are empty; if cells have a dash, insert an author query to define the dash, asking whether it stands for "Not available" or "Not applicable." (For example, "[AQ: What do empty cells indicate? Not available? Not applicable?]" or "[AQ: Does a dash indicate 'not available' or 'not applicable'?]"). If a dash is used to indicate "not applicable," it needs to be changed to "n.a."
6. Ensure that all tables and figures are mentioned by number in the text; the in-text reference should be lowercase (for example, "As shown in figure 1.1"). If a callout is missing, insert a query (for example, "[AQ: Figure 1.1 is not mentioned in the text. Please insert a text callout to the figure.]"). Do not request a "citation" because it can be misunderstood to mean source information.
7. Ensure that axis titles, legends, and labels are present in all figures that use axes. Ensure that unit indicators are present in all other figures. Ensure that axis titles, axis labels, and unit indicators use sentence-style capitalization.
8. Ensure that unit indicators are provided in tables whenever appropriate.
9. Spell out in the notes section all abbreviations in tables and figures, even if previously spelled out in the text.

E. MAPS

1. Ensure that maps are titled as “maps” rather than “figures.” Check that maps use the same two-digit numbering convention as figures and tables.
2. Ensure that maps appear in the proper order and have source lines and corresponding text callouts.
3. Make sure there are no country maps of India (other than as part of the region or the world). Individual province maps are allowed; however, the provinces of Jammu Kashmir, Azad Jammu Kashmir, and Arunachal Pradesh should not be depicted. The three provinces also should not appear in tables, figures, or text.

F. PHOTOGRAPHS

1. Make sure every photograph has a title and number, is numbered separately from figures, and uses the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables.

G. MATHEMATICS

1. Check equation numbering.

H. REFERENCES AND CITATIONS: WHAT TO LOOK FOR

1. Check text citations against the reference list or bibliography; query the author for any missing references; wherever possible, provide missing information and resolve any inconsistencies between the text citation and bibliographic entry, but query author if ambiguous. Convert *ibid.* and *op. cit.* to author-date citations. (Note that “*et al.*” in citations should not be italicized.)
2. Query incomplete entries if they do not have an author name, date, title, and publisher for books; or an author name, date, article title, journal title, volume number, and issue number for journals.
3. Correct the list order if any reference is out of sequence.
4. Correct titles that are formatted in sentence case; they should all be title case (except for foreign titles; those should not be converted to title case if they are in sentence case).
5. Query if the location of the publisher is missing.
6. Query if page numbers are missing from a chapter in a book or from a journal.
7. Query if an exact date, location, sponsor, or any other detail of a conference is left out.
8. Query if references are not cited in the text. **Do not delete them.**

I. REFERENCES AND CITATIONS: WHAT TO IGNORE

1. Do not query (or perform research) if some publications list full names and others initials.
2. Do not make the list consistent by replacing first names with initials. Do query if ONLY last names are used (this is uncommon).
3. Do not query if you are unsure whether a publication is formal (book) or informal (for example, a paper).
4. Do not query if a reference is for a publication in a language other than English.
5. Do not insert a query whether to move databases from the references to the endnotes. It is acceptable for databases to be included in the references.
6. Do not ask for an "Accessed on" date if a Web reference does not list it. Do not remove it if it does.

J. FILE PREPARATION

Upon completion of the editorial QC, provide **only** the redlined Word file(s) to the production editor.

APPENDIX A.8b EXTENDED EDITORIAL QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLIST

This checklist is for World Bank Studies or any special project that will not be copyedited after the Editorial Quality Control stage.

A. GENERAL TASKS

1. Insert necessary author queries into the Word files using the **Comments function**.
2. Apply any missing styles to headings to indicate their appropriate levels on the basis of existing styles or tags provided in the manuscript. Make sure the heading hierarchy doesn't move from A and B heads to run-in headings, skipping C heads.
3. Ensure that the front matter elements are in the following order; if they are not, rearrange to comply as needed: half-title page, title page, copyright page, contents, foreword (optional), preface (optional), acknowledgments (optional), about the authors or editors or list of contributors (optional), executive summary (optional), abbreviations.
4. Compile the list of abbreviations used throughout the publication, if not provided by authors. If an abbreviations list already exists, verify that all abbreviations used in the manuscript appear in the list and insert any that are missing. The abbreviations list in the front matter should be in alphabetical order by abbreviation or acronym rather than by the spelled-out text.
5. In preparation for the XML workflow, be aware of information in the front matter that needs to be cross-referenced in the book.
6. If cover images, figures, maps, or other graphics files appear to be of low resolution, in each case check the image size to see if the resolution can be improved. If it can be improved, do so; if it cannot, insert queries to the authors and production editor that higher-resolution files are needed (for example, "[[AQ: The resolution of this image is too low to print well. Please provide a high-resolution image.]]").

B. OVERALL CONSISTENCY

1. If a part or chapter opens without a heading, query the missing heading; do not insert "Introduction" (for example, "[[AQ: For the purposes of electronic format, all text needs to start with a heading. Please provide a heading for this text.]]").
2. Follow World Bank conventions for specifying country and economy names. Do not change the order of the countries as provided in the manuscript.
Important: Do not replace "Korea" with "Democratic Republic of Korea" without reading the text carefully; in most cases, "Korea" should be "Republic of Korea." Pay particular attention to China; Hong Kong SAR, China; Macao SAR, China; and Taiwan, China, which are economies and should never be referred to as countries.

3. Make sure there are no country maps of India (other than as part of the region or the world). Individual province maps are allowed; however, the provinces of Jammu Kashmir, Azad Jammu Kashmir, and Arunachal Pradesh should not be depicted. The three provinces also should not appear in tables, figures, or text.
4. Make capitalization and spelling correct and in accord with *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th edition, and the *World Bank Editorial Style Guide*.
5. Resolve inconsistencies in the spelling and diacritics of proper names and foreign words, and *communicate your resolution to the production editor*.
6. Spell out all abbreviations at first mention within each chapter, even if each occurs only once.
7. For XML purposes, be aware of text cross-references to other parts of the book. Query any cross-references that refer to parts that are missing. Replace vague cross-references (such as "see the next section," "see above") with specific language (such as the section title, chapter number, figure number). Ensure that page numbers are not used in cross-references.
8. For XML purposes, be aware of text formatted for emphasis, text in languages other than English, inline math, block quotes, and epigraphs.
9. Delete all paragraph numbers, unless otherwise directed.
10. Unless the production editor instructs otherwise, remove bold or italic first sentence formatting in all paragraphs.
11. Convert footnotes to endnotes at the end of each chapter preceding the references.
12. If any of the endnotes contain *only* author-date citations, put them in body text and remove the endnote.

C. LISTS

1. Ensure consistency in the handling of lists with respect to punctuation, deleting all end-of-line punctuation except the final period at the end of a list consisting of incomplete sentences.
2. Use initial capitalization for the first word of each bullet.
3. If numbering or lettering is used, check that numbers or letters are consecutive.
4. Ensure that lists will be properly tagged as such during XML conversion.

D. ANNEXES AND APPENDIXES

1. Check the text for the correct use of "annex" and "appendix." Use "annex" for additional material that is placed at the end of, and pertinent to, a specific chapter; use "appendix" for material that is placed at the end of, and pertinent to, the entire book.
2. Annexes should be numbered by chapter; for example, the first annex to the text of chapter 5 would be "Annex 5A." The second annex to chapter 5 would be "Annex 5B." Use numbering even if there's only one.
3. Appendixes should be lettered, not numbered. For example, the first appendix would be "Appendix A"; the second appendix would be "Appendix B." Subparts of the respective appendixes would be, for example, "Appendix A.1" or "Appendix B.2." Use lettering even if there's only one.

E. BOXES

1. Ensure that boxes are correctly numbered and appear in the proper order.
2. Ensure that all boxes are referred to by number in the text; the in-text reference should be lowercase (for example, “As shown in box 1.1”). If a callout is missing, insert a query (for example, “[AQ: Box 1.1 is not mentioned in the text. Please insert a text callout to the box.]”). Do not request a “citation” because it can be misunderstood to mean source information.
3. Convert any numbered notes to lowercase letters, and place footnote text at the base of boxes. **These notes should not be part of the chapter endnote sequence.**
4. Ensure that figures and tables inside boxes are numbered and titled. In the text box, number the figures and tables according to the following example for the first figure in box 2.1: “Figure B2.1.1.” In the “Figures” section of the table of contents, this box figure should be listed as number “B2.1.1.”
5. Do not query authors if a box is missing a source line.

F. FIGURES AND TABLES

1. Keep the figures in place in the text and insert typesetter instructions directly below each figure in the Word file; do not set up a separate figures file by chapter.
2. Ensure that figures and tables are correctly numbered and appear in the proper order. (Note that tables and figures in text boxes must be numbered according to within-box numbering rules and titled.)
3. Insert a query if there is a discrepancy between the figure in the Word file and any corresponding Excel or Stata file.
4. Ensure that every part of a figure, such as a panel, is identified by a letter and text title.
5. Ensure that every cell in a table has content; insert queries where any cells are empty. If cells have a dash, insert an author query to define the dash, asking whether it stands for “not available” or “not applicable.” (For example, “[AQ: What do empty cells indicate? Not available? Not applicable?]” or “[AQ: Does a dash indicate ‘not available’ or ‘not applicable’?]”). Note that if a dash is being used to indicate “not applicable,” it needs to be changed to n.a.
6. Ensure that all tables and figures are mentioned by number in the text; the in-text reference should be lowercase (for example, “As shown in figure 1.1”). If a callout is missing, insert a query (for example, “[AQ: Figure 1.1 is not mentioned in the text. Please insert a text callout to the figure.]”). Do not request a “citation” because it can be misunderstood to mean source information.
7. Ensure that axis titles, legends, and labels are present in all figures that use axes. Ensure that unit indicators are present in all other figures. Ensure that axis titles, axis labels, and unit indicators use sentence-style capitalization.
8. Ensure that unit indicators are provided in tables whenever appropriate.
9. **Directions in Development series (DIDs):** Do not query authors if source information has not been provided for figures or tables. A DID is edited before it is turned over to you for editorial QC.

10. **WBSs:** Query if source information has not been provided for figures, maps, and tables (for example, "[[AQ: Please provide source information for figure 1.1.]]").
11. Spell out in the notes section all abbreviations in tables and figures, even if previously spelled out in the text.
12. Identify when color, shading, text styles, and the like are critical to the meaning of a table. Specifically, do not leave unneeded shading or color. In instances when it seems that color or shading is needed, contact the production editor for guidance.
13. In figure- and table-related text (in the note or body text), flag if any figure or note content is referred to by its color.

G. PHOTOGRAPHS

1. Make sure every photograph has a title and number, is numbered separately from figures, and uses the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables.
2. If a photograph is missing a source line and "further permission required" notice, insert a query to flag it (for example, "[[AQ: Please indicate the source [photographer/copyright holder] of this photo.]]").

H. MATHEMATICS

1. Check equation numbering.
2. Ensure that inline and block equations are noted for proper XML conversion.

I. SOURCE DOCUMENTATION: WHAT TO LOOK FOR

1. Check text citations against the reference list or bibliography. Query the author for any missing references. Wherever possible, provide missing information and resolve any inconsistencies between the text citation and bibliographic entry, but query author if ambiguous. Convert *ibid.* and *op. cit.* to author-date citations. (Note that *et al.* in citations should not be italicized.)
2. Query incomplete entries if they do not have an author name, date, title, and publisher (for books) or an author name, date, article title, journal title, volume number, and issue number (for journals).
3. Correct the list order if any reference is out of sequence.
4. Correct titles that are formatted in sentence case; they should all be title case (except for foreign titles; those should not be converted to title case if they're in sentence case).

J. SOURCE DOCUMENTATION: WHAT TO IGNORE

1. Do not query if the location of the publisher is missing.
2. Do not query if page numbers are missing from a chapter in a book or from a journal.
3. Do not query if an exact date, location, sponsor, or any other detail of a conference is left out.

4. Do not query (or perform research) if some publications list full names and others initials. Do not make the list consistent by replacing first names with initials. Do query if *only* last names are used (this is uncommon).
5. Do not query if you are unsure whether a publication is formal (book) or informal (for example, a paper).
6. Do not query if a reference is for a publication in a language other than English.
7. Do not query if references are not cited in the text. **Do not delete them.** In such cases, simply change the heading of the section from “References” to “Bibliography” and make this heading change consistent throughout the book. Add a note to the author to indicate that this was done.
8. Do not query whether to move databases from the references to the endnotes. It is acceptable for databases to be included in the references.
9. Do not ask for an “accessed by” date if a Web reference doesn’t list it. Do not remove it if it does.

K. FILE PREPARATION

Upon completion of the editorial QC, provide the redlined Word file(s) and clean Word file(s) (with changes accepted and tracking left on to capture further changes) to the production editor.

APPENDIX B.1 PROOFREADING CHECKLIST FOR CATEGORIES 1 AND 2

The following is a list of proofreading tasks for first-page proofs. Proofreaders should limit their work to these specified tasks and not seek to improve the text at this stage.

The following is a list of potential proofreading tasks. The production editor will indicate which tasks are to be performed.

FIRST PAGE PROOFS

General Tasks

- Using the Adobe Acrobat guidance in **appendix B.3** of this guide, make needed changes or indicate queries.
- Update the editorial style sheet, and provide it to the production editor.
- If the production editor indicates that a hardcopy proofreading is acceptable, use a dark pen or pencil, and leave at least 0.75-inch margin from the edge of the page.

Formatting

- Check the page proofs against the specifications for the book or series or against the General Composition and Page Makeup Guidelines.
- Check each design element for consistency: boxes, chapter titles, figures, folios, headings, lists, paragraph styles, notes, running heads, and tables.
- Make sure that end-of-line hyphenation is consistent with *Chicago* 7.31–43.
- Check for stacks of words or hyphens. A stack of three or fewer is acceptable.
- Mark widows.

Text

- Check the table of contents against the text.
- Correct glaring grammatical errors. Do not worry about awkwardness, lack of clarity, or technical language.
- Using the current style sheet, correct errors or inconsistencies in punctuation, capitalization, and spelling throughout (including in figures and tables).

Please note: If a particular punctuation styling or word choice has been used consistently throughout the book but is not in accordance with the style guide, do not change it; for example, do not change “linkages” to “links” or do not set off, “In 2004 many of the reforms...” by a comma. Clear errors in grammar or spelling should be corrected.

- Ensure that abbreviations are spelled out at first mention in each chapter.
- Verify that correct country names have been used throughout. Query country names that do not appear alphabetically unless there is a reason for a different order to be used.

- Query inconsistencies in the spelling and diacritics of proper names and foreign words.
- Ensure that all endnote numbers are present in the text, are consecutively numbered, and have a corresponding endnote.

References

- Check source citations against the reference or bibliography list.

Boxes

- Verify that text boxes are correctly numbered, appear in the proper order and position (in relation to the text reference), and are referenced in the text.
- Verify that notes within boxes use lowercase letters and are placed at the end of the box.

Figures

- Verify that figures are correctly numbered, appear in the proper order and position (in relation to the text reference), and are referenced in the text.
- Check that every figure within a box has a number and title. The figures in boxes should be numbered according to the following example: Figure B2.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the figure is in a box, “2.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2.1.
- Check source lines for all figures.

If the authors have used data to create original figures, they should indicate the sources of the data in the source lines (for example, “Data from World Development Indicators database” or, less preferably because of the lack of specificity, “World Bank data”).

If the authors have created original figures that do not use data, such as flow charts, no source line is needed because the publication itself is the original source. The World Bank Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.

- Verify that nonstandard abbreviations and symbols used in figures are defined in a note.
- Ensure that axis titles and labels are present in figures with axes and that the labels follow sentence-style capitalization. Ensure that unit indicators have been provided for all other figures.
- Point out inconsistencies between the data in figures and the text. Flag the error if you think the wrong figure is called out in the text.

Maps

- Check that every map has a label, is numbered separately from figures, uses the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables, and has a corresponding text callout.
- Check that every map has a source line. If the map was created by the World Bank, the source line should include the IBRD number and date of approval (month/year).

- Check that every map has a corresponding text callout.
- Inside the map image, the GSD logo and the disclaimer fine print should be removed. The IBRD number and date should stay (even though this information is shown in the source line).

Tables

- Verify that tables are correctly numbered, appear in the proper order and position (in relation to the text reference), and are referenced in the text.
- Check that every table within a box has a number and title. The tables in boxes should be numbered according to the following example: Table B2.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the table is in a box, “2.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first table in box 2.1.
- Check source lines for all tables. If the author compiled data to create a table, provide the source of the data (for example, “Data from World Development Indicators database” or, less preferably because of the lack of specificity, “World Bank data”). If the authors have created an original table that does not use data, no source line is needed because the publication itself is the original source. The World Bank Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.
- Check that all nonstandard abbreviations and symbols used in a table, including as part of the title or unit indicator, are defined in a note to the table.
- Ensure that unit indicators are provided in tables whenever appropriate.
- If a table runs for more than one page, check that *continued* lines are provided and column heads are repeated.
- Check that every table has a column heading.
- Check that there are no blank cells within a table (except regression tables).
- Point out inconsistencies between the data in tables and the text.

SECOND PAGE PROOFS

- Ensure that all changes from the first page proofs were properly made and that no new errors were introduced.
- Carefully read all title page text for accuracy.
- Check the table of contents against the contributor list (if any); all text openers (including chapters, foreword, acknowledgments); the running heads or footers; and the text headings (usually level A headings only) to ensure the consistency and correctness of titles, authors’ or contributors’ names, and page numbers. Check lists of boxes, figures, and tables against the text to make certain that all are accounted for and are in sequence.
- Check the sequence of all pages (both with folios and blind) to ensure that they are in the correct order and that no pages are missing.
- Check running heads or footers for alignment and correct recto or verso placement. Check for accuracy against the book title, part title, chapter title, or author’s name.
- Check page alignment and margins throughout.

APPENDIX B.2 PROOFREADING CHECKLIST FOR CATEGORY 3

The following is a list of proofreading tasks for first-page proofs. Proofreaders should limit their work to these specified tasks and not seek to improve the text at this stage.

A. GENERAL TASKS

1. Leave existing margin queries as is (do not highlight them). Insert any new queries using the “Add Note to Text” button in Adobe Acrobat.
2. Update the editorial style sheet, if necessary, and provide it to the production editor.

B. FORMATTING

1. Check each design element for consistency: boxes, chapter titles, figures, folios, headings, lists, paragraph styles, notes, running heads, and tables.
2. Mark exceptionally bad widows.

C. TEXT

1. Check the table of contents against the text.
2. Correct glaring errors only. Do *not* worry about awkwardness, lack of clarity, or technical language.
3. Do *not* change punctuation other than to correct outright errors that hinder understanding and to insert serial commas (unless they have been consistently omitted). For example, do not insert commas after introductory phrases (“In 2004” or “In Germany”) at the start of sentences, and do not change commas to semicolons or vice versa if the meaning is clear.
4. Using the current style sheet, correct inconsistencies in capitalization and spelling throughout (including in figures and tables).

Please note: If a particular styling or word choice has been used consistently throughout the book but is not in accordance with the style guide, do *not* change it; for example, do not change “linkages” to “links.”

5. Ensure that abbreviations are spelled out at first mention in each chapter.
6. **Verify that correct country names have been used throughout.**
7. Query inconsistencies in the spelling and diacritics of proper names and foreign words.
8. Ensure that all endnote numbers are present in the text, are consecutively numbered, and have a corresponding endnote.

D. REFERENCES AND CITATIONS

1. Check source citations against the reference or bibliography list.
2. In the references section, let the “What to Ignore” list (see **appendix A.8b** of this guide, “Extended Editorial Quality Control Checklist”) be your guide when deciding what to “fix.”
3. Do not query quotes for which a page number has not been included in the citation.

E. BOXES

1. Verify that text boxes are correctly numbered, appear in the proper order and position (in relation to the text reference), and are referenced in the text.
2. Verify that notes within boxes use lowercase letters and are placed at the end of the box. **Box notes should not be part of the main chapter endnote sequence.**

F. FIGURES

1. Verify that figures are correctly numbered, appear in the proper order and position (in relation to the text reference), and are referenced in the text.
2. Check that every figure within a box has a number and title. The figures in boxes should be numbered according to the following example: Figure B2.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the figure is in a box, “2.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first figure in box 2.1.
3. Check source lines for all figures. If the authors have used data to create original figures, they should indicate the sources of the data in the source lines (for example, “Data from World Development Indicators database” or, less preferably because of the lack of specificity, “World Bank data”). If the authors have created original figures that do not use data, such as flow charts, no source line is needed because the publication itself is the original source (if a source line is present, mark it for deletion). The World Bank Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” and its derivatives should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.
4. Verify that nonstandard abbreviations and symbols used in figures are defined in a note.
5. Ensure that axis titles and labels are present in figures with axes and that the labels follow sentence-style capitalization. Ensure that unit indicators have been provided for all other figures.
6. Point out inconsistencies between the data in figures and the text. Flag the error if you think the wrong figure is called out in the text.

G. MAPS

1. Check that every map has a label, is numbered separately from figures, and uses the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables.
2. Check that every map has a source line. If the map was created by the World Bank, the source line should include the IBRD number and date of approval (month/year).

3. Inside the map image, the GSD logo and the disclaimer fine print should be removed. The IBRD number and date should stay (even though this information is shown in the source line as well).
4. Check that every map has a corresponding text callout.

H. PHOTOGRAPHS

Check that every photograph has a title and number, is numbered separately from figures, and uses the same two-digit numbering convention as for figures and tables.

1. Photographs must list the copyright holder in the source line. The source line must follow one of two conventions:

World Bank photographs: © Scott Wallace / World Bank. Further permission required for reuse.

Non-World Bank photographs: © Ami Vitale / Panos Pictures. Used with the permission of Ami Vitale / Panos Pictures. Further permission required for reuse.

I. TABLES

1. Verify that tables are correctly numbered, appear in the proper order and position (in relation to the text reference), and are referenced in the text.
2. Check that every table within a box has a number and title. The tables in boxes should be numbered according to the following example: Table B2.1.1, in which “B” indicates that the table is in a box, “2.1” identifies the box number (it is the first box in chapter 2), and “.1” indicates that this is the first table in box 2.1.
3. Check source lines for all tables. If the author compiled data to create a table, provide the source of the data (for example, “Data from World Development Indicators database” or, less preferably because of the lack of specificity, “World Bank data”). If the authors have created an original table that does not use data, no source line is needed because the publication itself is the original source. The World Bank Legal Department has directed that a source line of “Authors” and its derivatives should not be used because it can create confusion over copyright ownership.
4. Check that all nonstandard abbreviations and symbols used in a table, including as part of the title or unit indicator, are defined in a note to the table.
5. Ensure that unit indicators are provided in tables whenever appropriate.
6. If a table runs for more than one page, check that *continued* lines are provided and column heads are repeated.
7. Check that every table has a column heading.
8. Point out inconsistencies between the data in tables and the text.

APPENDIX B.3 ADOBE ACROBAT INSTRUCTIONS AND EXAMPLES

Following these instructions will ensure that substantial amounts of your time and ours will not be wasted owing to wrong or needlessly duplicative tool use.

ADOBE ACROBAT INSTRUCTIONS

Marking Up Page Proofs Using the Annotations Toolset

If you do not have the full version of Adobe Acrobat, you need to use the free Adobe Reader version X or higher to access the commenting functions described here. To mark up the page proof, please use the commenting tools (which appear under the **Annotations** heading of the **Comment** pane on the right side of the page) as follows:

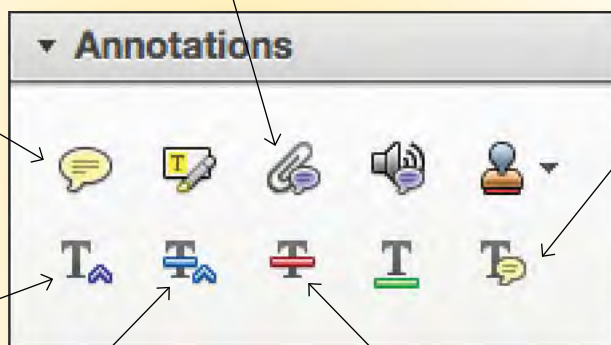
Add sticky note (PLEASE USE INFREQUENTLY):

Use this tool only to make a global change or to add a general comment, such as "This figure looks too big. Please reduce size." Do not use this tool to make changes to wording or punctuation, unless you cannot attach such a change to a text string.

Attach file:

Use this tool to add an attachment (for instance, if you're providing a replacement table or paragraph in a Word or Excel file).

Add note to text: Use this tool to highlight a word or several words and add a comment that applies to the highlighted phrase.



Insert text at cursor:

Use this tool to insert text in a precise location (e.g., before, after, or inside a word).

Add note to replace text:

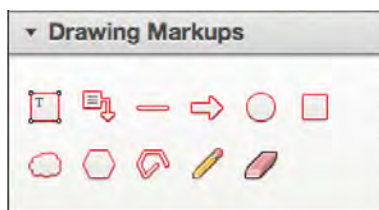
Use this tool to cross out and insert replacement text. If possible, use this tool the most, because it will enable you to most clearly communicate your changes.

Strikethrough:

Use this tool to delete text.

See the section in this appendix titled "Selected Markup Examples Using Adobe Acrobat's Annotation Tools" for an illustration of best practice for each tool. Note that some tools go unmentioned in this guidance document because they are not needed.

DRAWING MARKUPS: TOOLS OF LAST RESORT



The Comment pane also offers another full set of tools called **Drawing Markups**. These tools should be secondary to the commenting tools described above; however, they can be useful for clarifying instructions on figures, tables, or images. Please use them judiciously, however, as often it is enough to insert a single arrow or text callout, as opposed to drawing in multiple proofer's marks. Remember, we are not trying to duplicate the hardcopy experience with the electronic workflow.

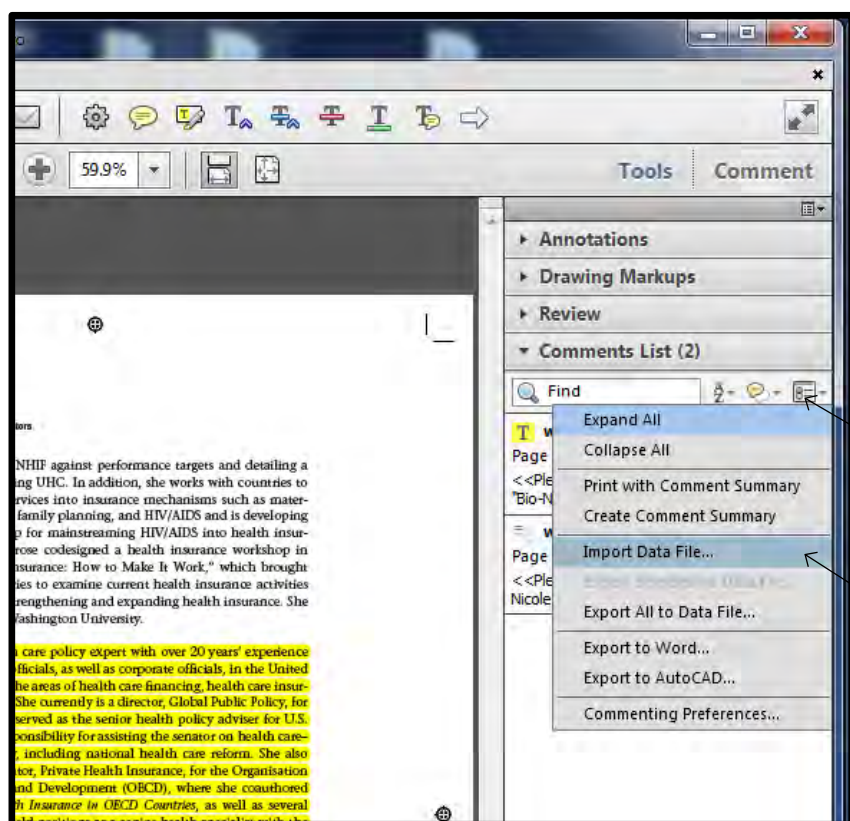
Printing Comments

Once your comments have been entered into the document, we have found it is not worthwhile to attempt printing them out. It does not work well with the defaults that Adobe products have built in.

Consolidating Comments from Multiple Users

Book editors dealing with comments from multiple authors (for example, World Bank task team leaders who oversee the work of contributors) and production editors who receive comments from authors and proofreaders need to know how to consolidate these comments.

To merge comments from two PDFs into a single PDF file, first select one of the PDFs to serve as the "master" copy. Resave the selected PDF and mark it by adding "_master.pdf" to the end of the file name. For this example, the page with the highlighted text will serve as the master.



Working now in the master file, (1) click the "options" icon on the Comments List, and (2) select "Import Data File" In the window that appears, select the file that contains the comments you want to import, and click "Open." The new comments will be added to the master file and will appear in the Comments List. Don't forget to save the file again after importing new comments.

SELECTED MARKUP EXAMPLES USING ADOBE ACROBAT'S ANNOTATION TOOLS

There are multiple ways to add revision instructions and comments to a document using Acrobat's Annotation Tools. Proofreaders and authors should note that the objective is not to duplicate the hardcopy markup experience (for instance, by resorting to the Drawing Tools to mimic a pencil), but rather to use these tools in a way that enables the recipient of the markup to review the changes electronically.

These guidelines are not exhaustive (that is, they do not cover all options available in the software), but they do cover pretty much every markup need we encounter at the World Bank. In all instances, best practice is to be as clear, precise, and restrained as possible. (By "restrained" we mean: *there is no need to highlight or draw a circle around a change you've made, no matter how small. We review all the revisions by going through the comments that appear in Acrobat's Comment pane, which displays all changes, big or small, with equal prominence. In general, you should avoid extraneous commands.*)

1. Text and punctuation can be inserted, replaced, changed, or deleted using the appropriate "Annotations" tool:



Insert text
at cursor



Replace text

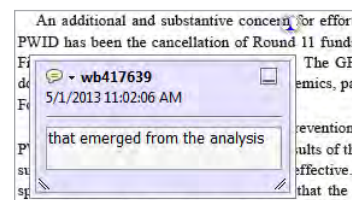


Strikethrough

Example: Mark text and punctuation for insertion in the middle of a sentence.



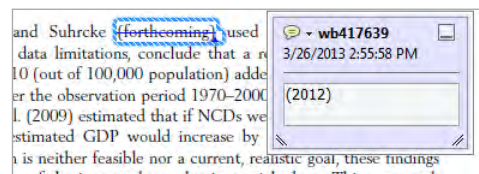
Place the cursor in the PDF text where the new text should be inserted. Click the "Insert text at cursor" icon, and type the text to be inserted into the text box. In all cases, include only the language to be added, with no extraneous words, as shown. Do not write, "insert..." If you must add an additional instruction, use a separate line and add that in brackets, for example, <<Make sure you don't add a comma at the end>>. (This kind of instruction is rarely necessary.)



Example: Mark text for correction, replacement, or to be rearranged.



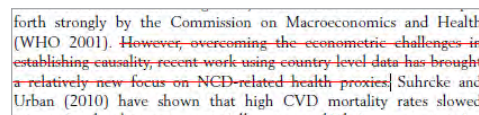
Highlight the incorrect text, and click the "Replace text" icon. Type the correction into the text box.



Example: Remove an entire sentence from the text.



Highlight the text to be deleted, and click the "Strikethrough" icon or hit the "Delete" key.

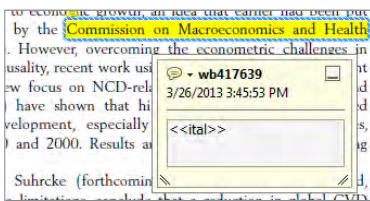


2. Typographical changes can be requested by using the “Add note to text” tool:

The typesetters with whom we work are adept at interpreting novel instruction. Often, a single note can take the place of multiple individual marks. Such instructions can speed up the time it takes to edit and review. However, please remember to only use “Add note to text” when it is more effective than the Annotation tools.

Note: To avoid confusion, place any instruction or comment that is not replacing or correcting text in **<<double angle brackets>>**.

Example: Italicize text.

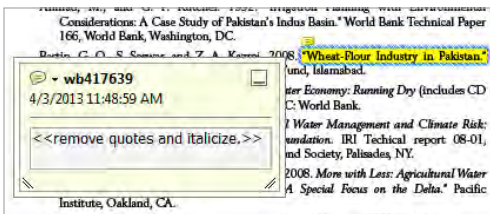


Highlight the text to be italicized and click the “Add note to text” icon.

Enter the instruction to the typesetter in the text box.

→ Similar instructions can be given to **<<bold>>**; **<<rom>>** (that is, plain text, not bold or italic); **<<rebreak>>**; **<<run back>>**; **<<em dash>>**; **<<en dash>>**, and so forth.

Example: Changing journal titles to book titles with a single instruction.

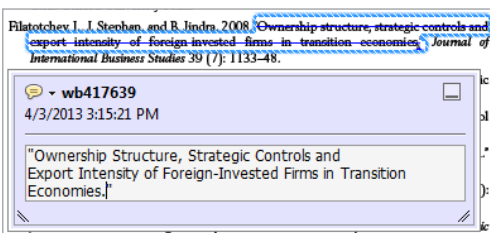


Highlight the title and click the “Add note to text” icon. Enter the instructions to the typesetter into the text box.

This method is better than using two deletions to eliminate the quotes and a highlight to change plain text to italic.

But sometimes the Annotation tools are still your first, best option, as in the next example.

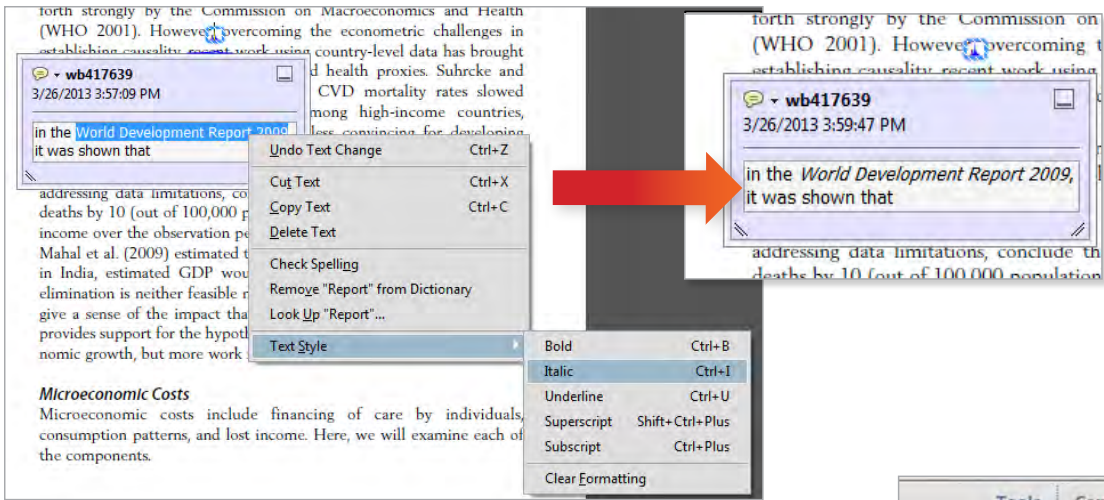
Example: Changing sentence case to headline-style capitalization with a single instruction.



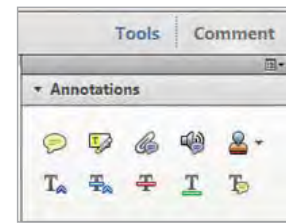
Highlight and copy text (Ctrl+C) and click the “Replace text” icon.

Paste the text (Ctrl+V) into the text box. Edit the text with correct capitalization, and retain appropriate formatting (such as italics) as needed. This way you won’t have to insert a text replacement for each letter you capitalize.

Note: Italicized, bold-faced, underlined, superscript, or subscript text can also be inserted by use of the “Text style” menu in the text box. When adding or replacing text, highlight the new text in the text box, and right click on it. Scroll to “Text style” and select the format you want the text to take.

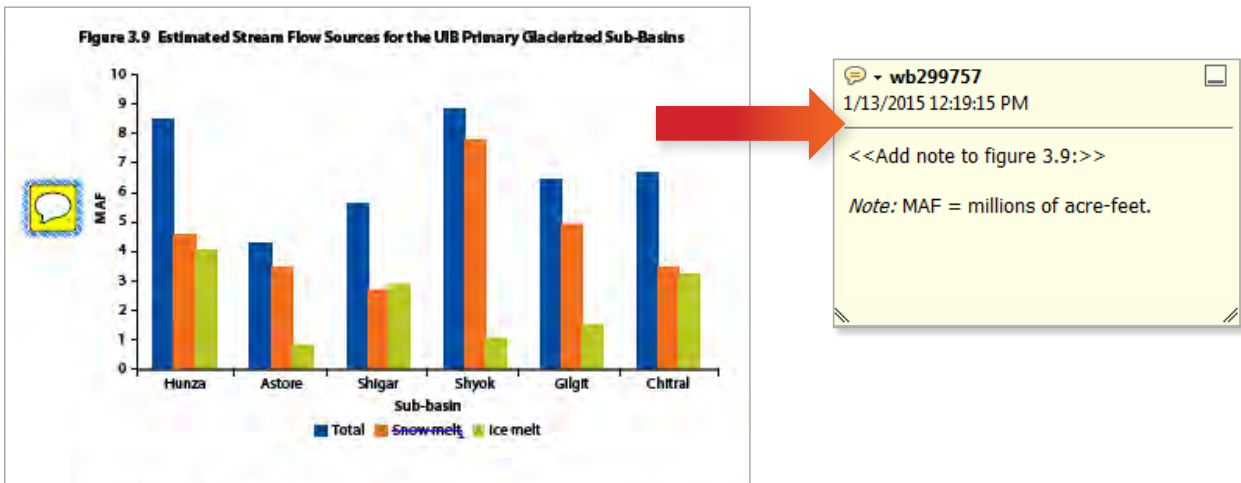


To access the contextual menu shown above, you need to have the particular comment detached from the Comment pane. Your comment will start out detached when you first select it. Once you exit and the comment ends up in the Comments pane, you can detach it by clicking on the Comment heading at the top of the Comments pane.



3. If (and only if) the four Annotation tools covered above cannot convey your change or instruction, use a Sticky Note and please be as clear, precise, and minimal as possible.

Example: Comment on a figure.



Note that the normally undesirable sticky comment tool was used in this case because there was no obvious text string to attach a Text Highlight comment to. And in the text of the comment, note that the instructions were enclosed in angled brackets, while the actual text to be typeset was not.

APPENDIX B.4 SAMPLE COPYRIGHT PAGE

This page of highly negotiated text is provided simply as a sample and so that proofreaders can check the copyright year and the Attribution line. Copyeditors or proofreaders should not make changes to copyright pages to conform to World Bank style.

© 2015 International Bank for Reconstruction and Development / The World Bank
1818 H Street NW, Washington, DC 20433
Telephone: 202-473-1000; Internet: www.worldbank.org

Some rights reserved

1 2 3 4 18 17 16 15

This work is a product of the staff of The World Bank with external contributions. The findings, interpretations, and conclusions expressed in this work do not necessarily reflect the views of The World Bank, its Board of Executive Directors, or the governments they represent. The World Bank does not guarantee the accuracy of the data included in this work. The boundaries, colors, denominations, and other information shown on any map in this work do not imply any judgment on the part of The World Bank concerning the legal status of any territory or the endorsement or acceptance of such boundaries.

Nothing herein shall constitute or be considered to be a limitation upon or waiver of the privileges and immunities of The World Bank, all of which are specifically reserved.

Rights and Permissions



This work is available under the Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 IGO license (CC BY 3.0 IGO) <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/igo>. Under the Creative Commons Attribution license, you are free to copy, distribute, transmit, and adapt this work, including for commercial purposes, under the following conditions:

Attribution—Please cite the work as follows: **[[Production editor: Insert the complete, correct citation here followed by the DOI. The following is an example: Galvanovska, Natalija, Michel Rogy, and Carlo Maria Rossotto. 2015. *Broadband Networks in the Middle East and North Africa: Accelerating High-Speed Internet Access.* <Add series name if the book is in a series>. Washington, DC: World Bank. doi:10.1596/978-1-4648-0112-9.]]** License: Creative Commons Attribution CC BY 3.0 IGO

Translations—If you create a translation of this work, please add the following disclaimer along with the attribution: *This translation was not created by The World Bank and should not be considered an official World Bank translation. The World Bank shall not be liable for any content or error in this translation.*

Adaptations—If you create an adaptation of this work, please add the following disclaimer along with the attribution: *This is an adaptation of an original work by The World Bank. Views and opinions expressed in the adaptation are the sole responsibility of the author or authors of the adaptation and are not endorsed by The World Bank.*

Third-party content—The World Bank does not necessarily own each component of the content contained within the work. The World Bank therefore does not warrant that the use of any third-party-owned individual component or part contained in the work will not infringe on the rights of those third parties. The risk of claims resulting from such infringement rests solely with you. If you wish to re-use a component of the work, it is your responsibility to determine whether permission is needed for that re-use and to obtain permission from the copyright owner. Examples of components can include, but are not limited to, tables, figures, or images.

All queries on rights and licenses should be addressed to the Publishing and Knowledge Division, The World Bank, 1818 H Street NW, Washington, DC 20433, USA; fax: 202-522-2625; e-mail: pubrights@worldbank.org.

ISBN (paper):

ISBN (electronic):

DOI:

Cover photo: **[[image credit, if applicable]]**

Sample credit for a non-WB image: © Ami Vitale / Panos Pictures. Used with the permission of Ami Vitale / Panos Pictures. Further permission required for reuse.

Sample credit for a WB image: © Curt Carnemark / World Bank. Further permission required for reuse.

Cover design: **[[Designer credit, if applicable]]**

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

[[CIP data]]

APPENDIX C COUNTRY, ECONOMY, AND TERRITORY NAMES

This list is based on the World Bank Corporate Secretariat's list of official country and economy names and adjectives. For names that are not listed here, refer to *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition.

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
Afghanistan	Afghan(s)	Afghan	
Albania	Albanian(s)	Albanian	
Algeria	Algerian(s)	Algerian	
Andorra	Andorran(s)	Andorran	
Angola	Angolan(s)	Angola or Angolan	
Antigua and Barbuda	Antiguan(s), Barbudan(s)	Antiguan, Barbudan	Antigua and Barbuda (no short form).
Argentina	Argentine(s)	Argentine	
Armenia	Armenian(s)	Armenian	
Aruba	Aruban(s)	Aruban	
Australia	Australian(s)	Australian	
Austria	Austrian(s)	Austrian	
Azerbaijan	Azerbaijani(s)	Azerbaijan or Azerbaijani	
Bahamas, The	Bahamian(s)	Bahamas or Bahamian	Use <i>The Bahamas</i> in text; <i>Bahamas, The</i> in tables and figures.
Bahrain	Bahraini(s)	Bahrain or Bahraini	
Bangladesh	Bangladeshi(s)	Bangladesh or Bangladeshi	
Barbados	Barbadian(s)	Barbados or Barbadian	
Belarus	Belarussian(s)	Belarussian	
Belgium	Belgian(s)	Belgian	
Belize	Belizean(s)	Belize or Belizean	
Benin	Beninese (sing./pl.)	Beninese	
Bermuda	Bermudan(s) or Bermudian(s)	Bermudan or Bermudian	
Bhutan	Bhutanese (sing./pl.)	Bhutanese	
Bolivia, Plurinational State of	Bolivian(s)	Bolivian	In publication or document titles, use <i>the Plurinational State of Bolivia</i> . In figures, tables, and running text, use <i>Bolivia</i> .
Bosnia and Herzegovina	Bosnian(s)	Bosnian	
Botswana	Motswana (sing.), Batswana (pl.)	Botswana	
Brazil	Brazilian(s)	Brazilian	
Brunei Darussalam	Bruneian(s)	Brunei or Bruneian	
Bulgaria	Bulgarian(s)	Bulgarian	
Burkina Faso	Burkinabe (sing./pl.)	Burkinabe	Never <i>Upper Volta</i>

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
Burma (see Myanmar)			Never use except in historical contexts.
Burundi	Murundi (sing.), Barundi (pl.)	Burundi	
Cabo Verde	Cabo Verdean(s)	Cabo Verdean	Not <i>Cape Verde</i>
Cambodia	Cambodian(s)	Cambodian	
Cameroon	Cameroonian(s)	Cameroonian	
Canada	Canadian(s)	Canadian	
Cayman Islands	Caymanian(s)	Caymanian	
Central African Republic	Central African(s)	Central African	Avoid CAR. Use <i>the Central African Republic</i> in text; <i>Central African Republic</i> in tables and figures.
Chad	Chadian(s)	Chad or Chadian	
Channel Islands			
Chile	Chilean(s)	Chilean	
China	Chinese (sing./pl.)	Chinese	Not <i>People's Republic of China</i> .
Colombia	Colombian(s)	Colombian	
Comoros	Comorian(s)	Comorian	Use <i>the Comoros</i> in text; <i>Comoros</i> in tables and figures.
Congo, Democratic Republic of	Congolese (sing./pl.)	Congolese	Use <i>the Democratic Republic of Congo</i> in text; <i>Congo, Dem. Rep.</i> in tables and figures. Use <i>Zaire</i> only in historical contexts.
Congo, Republic of	Congolese (sing./pl.)	Congolese	Use <i>the Republic of Congo</i> in text; <i>Congo, Rep.</i> in tables and figures.
Costa Rica	Costa Rican(s)	Costa Rican	
Côte d'Ivoire	Ivorian(s)	Ivorian	Never <i>Ivory Coast</i> ; note circumflex.
Croatia	Croat(s) or Croatian(s)	Croat or Croatian	
Cuba	Cuban(s)	Cuban	
Cyprus	Cypriot(s)	Cypriot	
Czech Republic	Czech(s)	Czech	Use <i>the Czech Republic</i> in text; <i>Czech Republic</i> in tables and figures. Use <i>Czechoslovakia</i> only in historical contexts.
Denmark	Dane(s)	Danish	
Djibouti	Djiboutian(s)	Djibouti	
Dominica	Dominican(s)	Dominica	
Dominican Republic	Dominican(s)	Dominican	Use <i>the Dominican Republic</i> in text; <i>Dominican Republic</i> in tables and figures.
Ecuador	Ecuadoran(s)	Ecuadoran	
Egypt, Arab Republic of	Egyptian(s)	Egyptian	Use <i>the Arab Republic of Egypt</i> at first mention in text, <i>Egypt</i> subsequently; always <i>Egypt, Arab Rep.</i> in tables and figures.
El Salvador	Salvadoran(s)	Salvadoran	
Equatorial Guinea	Equatorial Guinean(s)	Equatorial Guinean	
Eritrea	Eritrean(s)	Eritrean	
Estonia	Estonian(s)	Estonian	
Ethiopia	Ethiopian(s)	Ethiopian	
Faeroe Islands			
Fiji	Fijian(s)	Fiji	
Finland	Finn(s)	Finnish	
France	French (sing./pl.)	French	
French Polynesia			

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
Gabon	Gabonese (sing./pl.)	Gabonese	
Gambia, The	Gambian(s)	Gambian	Use <i>The Gambia</i> in text; <i>Gambia, The</i> , in tables and figures.
Georgia	Georgian(s)	Georgian	
Germany	German(s)	German	Preferable to <i>the Federal Republic of Germany</i> when the context is the period after unification in 1989; for the period 1949–89, distinguish between <i>the Federal Republic of Germany</i> and <i>the German Democratic Republic</i> ; never <i>West Germany</i> (FR of G) or <i>East Germany</i> (GDR).
Ghana	Ghanaian(s)	Ghanaian	
Great Britain (see United Kingdom)			
Greece	Greek(s)	Greek	
Greenland	Greenlander(s)	Greenlandic	
Grenada	Grenadian(s)	Grenadian	
Guam	Guamanian(s)	Guamanian	
Guatemala	Guatemalan(s)	Guatemalan	
Guinea	Guinean(s)	Guinean	
Guinea-Bissau	Guinean(s)	Guinea-Bissau	
Guyana	Guyanese (sing./pl.)	Guyana or Guyanese	
Haiti	Haitian(s)	Haitian	
Honduras	Honduran(s)	Honduran	
Hong Kong SAR, China			SAR should be added in all cases in text and figures and tables. Do not use <i>Hong Kong, China</i> , or <i>Hong Kong (China)</i> . Do not spell out <i>special administrative region</i> in text, figures, or tables. Do add SAR to the Abbreviations list and spell out. Do not use <i>country</i> in connection with Hong Kong; <i>economy</i> is acceptable.
Hungary	Hungarian(s)	Hungarian	
Iceland	Icelander(s)	Icelandic	
India	Indian(s)	Indian	Use <i>Mumbai</i> instead of <i>Bombay</i> .
Indonesia	Indonesian(s)	Indonesian	
Iran, Islamic Republic of	Iranian(s)	Iranian	Use <i>the Islamic Republic of Iran</i> in all cases in text; <i>Iran, Islamic Rep.</i> , in tables and figures.
Iraq	Iraqi(s)	Iraq or Iraqi	
Ireland	Irishman(men), Irishwoman (women), Irish	Irish	
Isle of Man	Manxman(s)		
Israel	Israeli(s)	Israel or Israeli	
Italy	Italian(s)	Italian	
Ivory Coast (see Côte d'Ivoire)			
Jamaica	Jamaican(s)	Jamaican	
Japan	Japanese (sing./pl.)	Japanese	
Jordan	Jordanian(s)	Jordanian	
Kazakhstan	Kazakhstani(s)	Kazakhstan or Kazakhstani	
Kenya	Kenyan(s)	Kenyan	

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
Kiribati	I-Kiribati	Kiribati	
Korea, Democratic People's Republic of	Korean(s)	Korean	Never North Korea. Use <i>the Democratic People's Republic of Korea</i> in text; <i>Korea, Dem. People's Rep.</i> , in tables and figures.
Korea, Republic of	Korean(s)	Korean	Never South Korea. Use <i>the Republic of Korea</i> at first mention in text, <i>Korea</i> subsequently unless the <i>Democratic People's Republic of Korea</i> is also being discussed, in which case the full formal name must be used; <i>Korea, Rep.</i> , in tables and figures.
Kosovo	Kosovar(s)	Kosovar	
Kuwait	Kuwaiti(s)	Kuwait or Kuwaiti	
Kyrgyz Republic	Kyrgyz (sing./pl.)	Kyrgyz	Use <i>the Kyrgyz Republic</i> in text; <i>Kyrgyz Republic</i> in tables and figures.
Lao People's Democratic Republic	Lao, the Lao	Lao	Never Laos. Use <i>the Lao People's Democratic Republic</i> at first mention in text, <i>Lao PDR</i> subsequently; <i>Lao PDR</i> in tables and figures.
Latvia	Latvian(s)	Latvian	
Lebanon	Lebanese (sing./pl.)	Lebanese	
Lesotho	Mosotho (sing.), Basotho (pl.)	Lesotho	
Liberia	Liberian(s)	Liberian	
Libya	Libyan(s)	Libyan	
Liechtenstein	Liechtensteiner(s)		
Lithuania	Lithuanian(s)	Lithuanian	
Luxembourg	Luxembourger(s)	Luxembourg	
Macao SAR, China			SAR should be added in all cases in text and figures and tables Do not use <i>Macao, China, or Macao (China)</i> . Do not spell out <i>special administrative region</i> . Do add SAR to the Abbreviations list and spell out. Do not use <i>country</i> in connection with Macao; <i>economy</i> is acceptable.
Macedonia, former Yugoslav Republic of			Use <i>the former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia</i> at first mention in text, <i>FYR Macedonia</i> subsequently; <i>Macedonia, FYR</i> , in tables and figures.
Madagascar	Malagasy (sing./pl.)	Malagasy	
Malawi	Malawian(s)	Malawian	
Malaysia	Malaysian(s)	Malaysian	
Maldives	Maldivian(s)	Maldivian	
Mali	Malian(s)	Malian	
Malta	Maltese (sing./pl.)	Maltese	
Marshall Islands	Marshallese (sing./pl.)	Marshall Islands	Use <i>the Marshall Islands</i> in text; <i>Marshall Islands</i> in tables and figures.
Mauritania	Mauritanian(s)	Mauritanian	
Mauritius	Mauritian(s)	Mauritian	
Mexico	Mexican(s)	Mexican	
Micronesia, Federated States of	Micronesian(s)	Micronesian	Use <i>the Federated States of Micronesia</i> in text; <i>Micronesia, Fed. Sts.</i> , in tables and figures.
Moldova	Moldovan(s)	Moldovan	
Monaco			

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
Mongolia	Mongolian(s)	Mongolian	
Montenegro	Montenegrin(s)	Montenegrin	Not <i>Serbia and Montenegro</i> except in historical contexts. Also, only in historical contexts, <i>the former Yugoslavia</i> may be used in text; <i>Yugoslavia, former</i> , in tables and figures.
Morocco	Moroccan(s)	Moroccan	
Mozambique	Mozambican(s)	Mozambican	
Myanmar	Myanmar	Myanmar	Never <i>Burma</i> except in historical contexts. The capital is <i>Yangon</i> , not <i>Rangoon</i> .
Namibia	Namibian(s)	Namibian	
Nepal	Nepalese (sing./pl.)	Nepalese	
Netherlands	Netherlander(s)	Netherland or Netherlandic	Use <i>the Netherlands</i> in text; <i>Netherlands</i> in tables and figures.
Netherlands Antilles			
New Caledonia			
New Zealand	New Zealander(s)	New Zealand	
Nicaragua	Nicaraguan(s)	Nicaraguan	
Niger	Nigerien(s)	Nigerien	
Nigeria	Nigerian(s)	Nigerian	
Northern Mariana Islands			
Norway	Norwegian(s)	Norwegian	
Oman	Omani(s)	Oman or Omani	
Pakistan	Pakistani(s)	Pakistan or Pakistani	
Palau	Palauan(s)	Palauan	
Panama	Panamanian(s)	Panamanian	
Papua New Guinea	Papua New Guinean(s)	Papua New Guinea	
Paraguay	Paraguayan(s)	Paraguayan	
Peru	Peruvian(s)	Peruvian	
Philippines	Filipino(s)	Philippine	Use <i>the Philippines</i> in text; <i>Philippines</i> in tables and figures.
Poland	Pole(s)	Polish	
Portugal	Portuguese (sing./pl.)	Portuguese	
Puerto Rico	Puerto Rican(s)	Puerto Rican	
Qatar	Qatari(s)	Qatar or Qatari	
Romania	Romanian(s)	Romanian	
Russian Federation	Russian(s)	Russian	Use <i>the Russian Federation</i> at first mention in text, <i>Russia</i> subsequently; <i>Russian Federation</i> in tables and figures. Use <i>USSR</i> or <i>Soviet Union</i> only in historical contexts.
Rwanda	Rwandese (sing./pl.)	Rwandese	
Samoa	Samoan(s)	Samoan	Not <i>Western Samoa</i> .
San Marino	Sammarinese (sing./pl.)	Sammarinese	
São Tomé and Príncipe	Saotomean(s)	São Tomé and Príncipe	No short form; note diacritical marks.
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian(s)	Saudi Arabian	
Senegal	Senegalese (sing./pl.)	Senegal or Senegalese	
Serbia	Serbian(s)	Serbian	Not <i>Serbia and Montenegro</i> except in historical contexts. Also, only in historical contexts, <i>the former Yugoslavia</i> may be used in text; <i>Yugoslavia, former</i> , in tables and figures.

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
Seychelles	Seychellois (sing./pl.)	Seychelles	Use <i>the Seychelles</i> in text; <i>Seychelles</i> in tables and figures.
Sierra Leone	Sierra Leonean(s)	Sierra Leonean	
Singapore	Singaporean(s)	Singapore or Singaporean	
Slovak Republic	Slovak(s)	Slovak	Use <i>the Slovak Republic</i> in text; <i>Slovak Republic</i> in tables and figures. Use <i>Czechoslovakia</i> only in historical contexts.
Slovenia	Slovene(s) or Slovenian(s)	Slovene or Slovenian	
Solomon Islands	Solomon Islander(s)	Solomon Islands	Use <i>the Solomon Islands</i> in text; <i>Solomon Islands</i> in tables and figures.
Somalia	Somali(s)	Somali	
South Africa	South African(s)	South African	
South Sudan	South Sudanese (sing./pl.)	South Sudanese	
Soviet Union (see Russian Federation)			Use only in historical contexts.
Spain	Spaniard(s)	Spanish	
Sri Lanka	Sri Lankan(s)	Sri Lanka	
St. Kitts and Nevis	Kittitian(s), Nevisian(s)	St. Kitts and Nevis	No short form.
St. Lucia	St. Lucian(s)	St. Lucian	
St. Vincent and the Grenadines	St. Vincentian(s) or Vincentian(s)	St. Vincentian or Vincentian	No short form.
Sudan	Sudanese (sing./pl.)	Sudanese	
Suriname	Surinamese (sing./pl.)	Surinamese	
Swaziland	Swazi(s)	Swazi	
Sweden	Swede(s)	Swedish	
Switzerland	Swiss (sing./pl.)	Swiss	
Syrian Arab Republic	Syrian(s)	Syrian	Use <i>the Syrian Arab Republic</i> at first mention in text, <i>Syria</i> subsequently; <i>Syrian Arab Republic</i> in tables and figures.
Taiwan, China			Not <i>Taiwan (China)</i> . Do not use <i>country</i> in connection with <i>Taiwan</i> ; <i>economy</i> is acceptable.
Tajikistan	Tajik(s)	Tajik	
Tanzania	Tanzanian(s)	Tanzanian	
Thailand	Thai(s)	Thai	
Timor-Leste			Not <i>East Timor</i> .
Togo	Togolese (sing./pl.)	Togolese	
Tonga	Tongan(s)	Tongan	
Trinidad and Tobago	Trinidadian(s), Tobagonian(s)	Trinidad and Tobago	No short form.
Tunisia	Tunisian(s)	Tunisian	
Turkey	Turk(s)	Turkish	
Türkmenistan	Turkmen(s)	Turkmen	
Tuvalu	Tuvaluan(s)	Tuvaluan	
Uganda	Ugandan(s)	Ugandan	
Ukraine	Ukrainian(s)	Ukrainian	Do not use <i>the Ukraine</i> .
United Arab Emirates		United Arab Emirates	Use <i>the United Arab Emirates</i> in text; <i>United Arab Emirates</i> in tables and figures.

COUNTRY/ECONOMY NAME	NOUN (PLURAL IN PARENTHESES)	ADJECTIVE OF NATIONALITY	SPECIAL TREATMENT (IF ANY)
United Kingdom	Briton (British)	U.K., of the United Kingdom, British	Use <i>the United Kingdom</i> (n.) or <i>U.K.</i> (adj.) in text; <i>United Kingdom</i> in tables and figures. <i>Great Britain</i> may be used if that is the author's preference, it is used consistently, and the references to the country are passing or historical.
United States	American(s)	U.S., of the United States	Use <i>the United States</i> (n.) or <i>U.S.</i> (adj.) in text; <i>United States</i> in tables and figures. <i>American</i> is acceptable as an adjective in passing references.
Uruguay	Uruguayan(s)	Uruguayan	
USSR (see Russian Federation)			Use only in historical contexts.
Uzbekistan	Uzbek(s)	Uzbek	
Vanuatu	ni-Vanuatu	Vanuatu	
Venezuela, República Bolivariana de	Venezuelan(s)	Venezuelan	Use <i>República Bolivariana de Venezuela</i> in text (yes, every single time); <i>Venezuela, RB</i> , in tables and figures.
Vietnam	Vietnamese (sing./pl.)	Vietnamese	
Virgin Islands (U.S.)			
West Bank and Gaza			Do not use <i>country</i> ; the term <i>economy</i> is acceptable. Use only <i>West Bank</i> or <i>Gaza</i> when text or data apply to only one. Do not use <i>Palestine</i> .
Yemen, Republic of	Yemeni(s)	Republic of Yemen	Use <i>the Republic of Yemen</i> in text; <i>Yemen, Rep.</i> , in tables and figures. Use <i>People's Democratic Republic of Yemen</i> and <i>Arab Republic of Yemen</i> only in historical contexts; do not use <i>North Yemen</i> or <i>South Yemen</i> .
Yugoslavia (see Montenegro and Serbia)			Use only in historical contexts.
Zaire (see Congo, Democratic Republic of)			Use only in historical contexts.
Zambia	Zambian(s)	Zambian	
Zimbabwe	Zimbabwean(s)	Zimbabwean	

APPENDIX D CURRENCY UNITS

Country, economy, or area	CURRENCY UNITS				SUBSIDIARY UNITS		
	Singular	Plural	Adjective	Abbreviation	Singular	Plural	Value in terms of main currency
Afghanistan	Afghani	Afghanis		Af	pul	puls	Af 0.01
Albania	lek	leks	Albanian	lek	qindar	qindarka	lek 0.01
Algeria	dinar	dinars	Algerian	DA	centime	centimes	DA 0.01
Andorra	euro ^{a,b}	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Angola	kwanza	kwanzas	Angolan	Kz	cêntimo	cêntimos	Kz 0.01
Anguilla	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
Antigua and Barbuda	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
Argentina	peso	pesos	Argentine	Arg\$	centavo	centavos	Arg\$0.01
Armenia	dram	drams	Armenian	dram	luma	lumas	dram 0.01
Aruba	florin	florins	Aruban	Af.	cent	cents	Af. 0.01
Australia	dollar	dollars	Australian	\$A	cent	cents	\$A 0.01
Austria	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Azerbaijan	manat	manat	Azerbaijan	manat	kepik	kepiks	manat 0.01
Azores	escudo	escudos	Portuguese	Esc	centavo	centavos	Esc 0.01
Bahamas, The	dollar	dollars	Bahamian	B\$	cent	cents	B\$0.01
Bahrain	dinar	dinars	Bahrain	BD	fil	fil	BD 0.001
Bangladesh	taka	taka	Bangladesh	Tk	poisha	poisha	Tk 0.01
Barbados	dollar	dollars	Barbados	BDS\$	cent	cents	BDS\$0.01
Belarus	ruble	rubles	Belarusian	Rbl			
Belgium	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Belize	dollar	dollars	Belize	BZ\$	cent	cents	BZ\$0.01
Benin	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Bermuda	dollar	dollars	Bermuda	Ber\$	cent	cents	Ber\$0.01
Bhutan	ngultrum	ngultrum	Bhutanese	Nu	chhetrum	chhetrum	Nu 0.01
Bolivia	boliviano	bolivianos		Bs	centavo	centavos	Bs 0.01
Bosnia and Herzegovina	convertible marka	convertible marka		KM	pfening	pfeninga	KM 0.01
Botswana	pula	pula	Botswana	P	thebe	thebe	P 0.01
Brazil	real ^d	reais	Brazilian	R\$	centavo	centavos	R\$0.01
British Virgin Islands	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$*	cents	cents	\$0.01
Brunei Darussalam	dollar	dollars	Brunei	B\$	cent	cents	B\$0.01
Bulgaria	lev	leva	Bulgarian	Lev	stotinka	stotinki	Lev 0.01
Burkina Faso	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Burundi	franc	francs	Burundi	FBu	centime	centimes	FBu 0.01
Cabo Verde	escudo	escudos	Cape Verde	CVEsc	centavo	centavos	CVEsc 0.01
Cambodia	riel	riels	Cambodian	CR	sen	sen	CR 0.01
Cameroon	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01

Country, economy, or area	CURRENCY UNITS				SUBSIDIARY UNITS		
	Singular	Plural	Adjective	Abbreviation	Singular	Plural	Value in terms of main currency
Canada	dollar	dollars	Canadian	Can\$	cent	cents	Can\$0.01
Canary Islands	peseta	pesetas	Spanish	Ptas ^f	céntimo	céntimos	Pta 0.01
Cayman Islands	dollar	dollars	Cayman Islands	C\$	cent	cents	C\$0.01
Central African Republic	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Chad	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Chile	peso	pesos	Chilean	Ch\$	centavo	centavos	Ch\$0.01
China	yuan ^g	yuan ^g	Chinese	Y	fen ^h	fen	Y 0.01
Colombia	peso	pesos	Colombian	Col\$	centavo	centavos	Col\$0.01
Comoros	franc	francs	Comorian	CF	centime	centimes	CF 0.01
Congo, Dem. Rep.	franc	francs	Congo	CGF	centime	centimes	CGF 0.01
Congo, Rep.	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Costa Rica	colón	colones	Costa Rican	C	céntimo	céntimos	C 0.01
Côte d'Ivoire	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Croatia	kuna	kunas	Croatian	HRK	lipa	lipa	HRK 0.01
Cuba	peso	pesos	Cuban	\$	centavo	centavos	\$0.01
Cyprus	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Czech Republic	koruna	koruny	Czech	CZK	halé	haléře	CZK 0.01
Denmark	krone	kroner	Danish	DKr	øre	øre	DKr 0.01
Djibouti	franc	francs	Djibouti	DF	centime	centimes	DF 0.01
Dominica	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
Dominican Republic	peso	pesos	Dominican	RD\$	centavo	centavos	RD\$0.01
Ecuador	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$ ^e	centavo	centavos	\$0.01
Egypt, Arab Rep.	pound	pounds	Egyptian	LE	piastre ⁱ	piastres	LE 0.01
El Salvador	colón ^j dollar ⁱ	colones ^j dollars ⁱ	Salvadoran U.S.	C \$ or US\$ ^e	centavo cent	centavos cents	C 0.01 \$0.01
Equatorial Guinea	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Eritrea	nakfa	nakfa	Eritrean	ERN	cent	cents	ERN 0.01
Estonia	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Ethiopia	birr	birr	Ethiopian	Br	cent	cents	Br 0.01
Faeroe Islands	krone	kroner	Danish	DKr	øre	øre	DKr 0.01
Falkland Islands	pound	pounds	Falkland Islands	£	new penny	new pence	£0.01
Fiji	dollar	dollars	Fiji	F\$	cent	cents	F\$0.01
Finland	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
France	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
French Guiana	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
French Polynesia	franc	francs	CFP	CFPF	centime	centimes	CFPF 0.01
Gabon	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Gambia, The	dalasi	dalasis	Gambian	D	butut	bututs	D 0.01
Georgia	lari	lari	Georgian	GEL	tetri	tetri	GEL 0.01
Germany	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Ghana	cedi	cedis	Ghanaian	¢	pesewa	pesewas	¢0.01
Gibraltar	pound	pounds	Gibraltar	£	new penny	new pence	£0.01
Greece	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Greenland	krone	kroner	Danish	DKr	øre	øre	DKr 0.01
Grenada	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
Guadeloupe	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Guatemala	quetzal	quetzales	Guatemalan	Q	centavo	centavos	Q 0.01

Country, economy, or area	CURRENCY UNITS				SUBSIDIARY UNITS		
	Singular	Plural	Adjective	Abbreviation	Singular	Plural	Value in terms of main currency
Guinea	franc	francs	Guinean	GF			
Guinea Bissau	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Guyana	dollar	dollars	Guyana	G\$	cent	cents	G\$0.01
Haiti	gourde	gourdes	Haitian	G	centime	centimes	G 0.01
Honduras	lempira	lempiras	Honduran	L	centavo	centavos	L 0.01
Hong Kong SAR, China	dollar	dollars	Hong Kong	HK\$	cent	cents	HK\$0.01
Hungary	forint	forint	Hungarian	Ft	fillér	fillér	Ft 0.01
Iceland	króna	krónur	Icelandic	ISK	eyrir	aurar	ISK 0.01
India	rupee	rupees	Indian	Rs ^k	paisa	paise	Re 0.01
Indonesia	rupiah	rupiah	Indonesian	Rp	sen	sen	Rp 0.01
Iran, Islamic Rep.	rial	rials	Iranian	Rls ^l			
Iraq	dinar	dinars	Iraqi	ID	fil	fil	ID 0.001
Ireland	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Israel	new shekel	new shkalim	Israeli	NIS	agora	agorot	NIS 0.01
Italy	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Jamaica	dollar	dollars	Jamaica	J\$	cent	cents	J\$0.01
Japan	yen	yen	Japanese	¥	sen	sen	¥0.01
Jordan	dinar	dinars	Jordanian	JD	fil	fil	JD 0.001
Kazakhstan	tenge	tenge	Kazakhstani	T	tiyn	tiyns	T 0.01
Kenya	shilling	shillings	Kenya	K Sh	cent	cents	K Sh 0.01
Kiribati	dollar	dollars	Australian	\$A	cent	cents	\$A 0.01
Korea, Dem. People's Rep.	won	won	Korean Democratic Peoples' Republic		chun	chun	won 0.01
Korea, Rep.	won	won	Korean	₩	chun	chun	₩0.01
Kosovo	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cent	€0.01
Kuwait	dinar	dinars	Kuwaiti	KD	fil	fil	KD 0.001
Kyrgyz Republic	som	soms	Kyrgyz Republic	som	tyiyn	tyiyns	som 0.01
Lao PDR	kip	kip	Lao	KN			
Latvia	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cent	€0.01
Lebanon	pound	pounds	Lebanese	LL			
Lesotho	loti ^m	maloti	Lesotho	M	sente	lisente	M 0.01
Liberia	dollar	dollars	Liberian	\$	cent	cents	\$0.01
Libya	dinar	dinars	Libyan	LD	dirham	dirhams	LD 0.001
Liechtenstein	franc	francs	Swiss	Sw F	centime	centimes	Sw F 0.01
Lithuania	litas	litai	Lithuanian	LTL	centas	centai	LTL 0.01
Luxembourg	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Macao SAR, China	pataca	patacas	Macao	P	avo	avos	P 0.01
Macedonia, FYR	denar	denars	Macedonian	MDen	deni	deni	MDen 0.01
Madagascar	franc	francs	Malagasy	FMG	centime	centimes	FMG 0.01
Madeira	escudo	escudos	Portuguese	Esc	centavo	centavos	Esc 0.01
Malawi	kwacha	kwacha	Malawi	MK	tambala	tambala	MK 0.01
Malaysia	ringgit	ringgit	Malaysian	RM	sen	sen	RM 0.01
Maldives	rufiyaa	rufiyaa	Maldivian	Rf	laari	laari	Rf 0.01
Mali	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Malta	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Marshall Islands	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$ ^e	cent	cents	\$0.01
Martinique	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01

Country, economy, or area	CURRENCY UNITS				SUBSIDIARY UNITS		
	Singular	Plural	Adjective	Abbreviation	Singular	Plural	Value in terms of main currency
Mauritania	ouguiya ⁿ	ouguiyas ⁿ	Mauritanian	UM	khoum	khoums	UM 0.20 ^o
Mauritius	rupee	rupees	Mauritian	MUR	cent	cents	MUR 0.01
Mexico	peso	pesos	Mexican	Mex\$	centavo	centavos	Mex\$0.01
Micronesia, Fed. States	dollar	dollars	U.S	\$ or US\$ ^a	cent	cents	\$0.01
Moldova	leu	lei	Moldovan	MDL	ban	bani	MDL 0.01
Monaco	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Mongolia	tughrik	tughriks	Mongolian	Tog	möngö	möngö	Tog 0.01
Montenegro	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Montserrat	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Morocco	dirham	dirhams	Moroccan	DH	centime	centimes	DH 0.01
Mozambique	metical	meticais	Mozambican	Mt	centavo	centavos	Mt 0.01
Myanmar	kyat	kyats	Myanmar	K	pya	pyas	K 0.01
Namibia	dollarj	dollarsj	Namibia	N\$	cent	cents	N\$0.01
Nauru	dollar	dollars	Australian	\$A	cent	cents	\$A 0.01
Nepal	rupee	rupees	Nepalese	NPR	paisa	paisa	NPR 0.01
Netherlands	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Netherlands Antilles	guilder	guilders	Netherlands Antillean	NA f.	cent	cents	NA f. 0.01
New Caledonia	franc	francs	CFP	CFPF	centime	centimes	CFPF 0.01
New Zealand	dollar	dollars	New Zealand	\$NZ	cent	cents	\$NZ 0.01
Nicaragua	córdoba	córdobas	Nicaraguan	C\$	centavo	centavos	C\$0.01
Niger	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Nigeria	naira	naira	Nigerian	₦	kobo	kobo	₦0.01
Norway	kroner	kroner	Norwegian	NKr	øre	øre	NKr 0.01
Oman	rial Omani	rials Omani		RO	baisa	baisas	RO 0.001
Pakistan	rupee	rupees	Pakistan	PRs ^p	paisa	paisas	PRe 0.01
Palau	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$ ^e	cent	cents	\$0.01
Panama	balboa	balboas	Panamanian	B	céntimo	céntimos	B 0.01
Papua New Guinea	kina	kina	Papua New Guinea	K	toea	toea	K 0.01
Paraguay	guaraní	guaraníes	Paraguayan	₧	céntimo	céntimos	₧0.01
Peru	nuevo sol	nuevos soles	Peruvian	S/.	céntimo	céntimos	S/. 0.01
Philippines	peso	pesos	Philippine	₱	centavo	centavos	₱0.01
Poland	zloty	zlotys	Polish	Zl	grosz	groszy	Zl 0.01
Portugal	euro ^c	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Qatar	riyal	riyals	Qatar	QR	dirham	dirhams	QR 0.01
Réunion	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Romania	New leu	lei ^q	Romanian	leu			
Russian Federation	ruble	rubles	Russian	Rub	kopek	kopeks	Rub 0.01
Rwanda	franc	francs	Rwanda	RF	centime	centimes	RF 0.01
Samoa	tala	tala	Samoa	SAT	sene	sene	SAT 0.01
San Marino	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
São Tomé and Príncipe	dobra	dobras	São Tomé and Príncipe	Db	centimo	centimos	Db 0.01
Saudi Arabia	riyal	riyals	Saudi Arabian	SRI ^s	halala	halalas	SRI 0.01
Senegal	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Serbia	dinar	dinars	Serbian	SRD	para	para	SRD 0.01
Seychelles	rupee	rupees	Seychelles	SR	cent	cents	SR 0.01
Sierra Leone	leone	leones	Sierra Leonean	Le	cent	cents	Le 0.01

Country, economy, or area	CURRENCY UNITS				SUBSIDIARY UNITS		
	Singular	Plural	Adjective	Abbreviation	Singular	Plural	Value in terms of main currency
Singapore	dollar	dollars	Singapore	S\$	cent	cents	S\$0.01
Slovak Republic	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Slovenia	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Solomon Islands	dollar	dollars	Solomon Islands	SI\$	cent	cents	SI\$0.01
Somalia	shilling	shillings	Somali	So. Sh.	cent	cents	So. Sh. 0.01
South Africa	rand	rand	South African	R	cent	cents	R 0.01
South Sudan	pound	pounds	South Sudanese	SSP	piastre ⁱ	piastres	SSP 0.01
Spain	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
Sri Lanka	rupee	rupees	Sri Lanka	SL Rs ^a	cent	cents	SL Re 0.01
St. Helena	pound ^d	pounds ^d	sterling ^t	£ or £ stg. ^t	new penny	new pence	£0.01
St. Kitts and Nevis	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
St. Lucia	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
St. Pierre and Miquelon	euro ^b	euros		€	cent	cents	€0.01
St. Vincent and the Grenadines	dollar	dollars	Eastern Caribbean	EC\$	cent	cents	EC\$0.01
Sudan	pound	pound	Sudanese	SD	piastre ⁱ	piastres	SD 0.01
Suriname	guilder	guilders	Suriname	Sf	cent	cents	Sf 0.01
Swaziland	lilangeni	emalangeni	Swaziland	E	cent	cents	E 0.01
Sweden	krona	kronor	Swedish	SKr	öre	öre	SKr 0.01
Switzerland	franc	francs	Swiss	Sw F	centime	centimes	Sw F 0.01
Syrian Arab Republic	pound	pounds	Syrian	LS	piastre ⁱ	piastres	LS 0.01
Taiwan, China	new dollar	dollars	New Taiwan	NT\$	fen ^u	fen	NT\$0.01
Tajikistan	somoni	somoni	Tajik	SM	diram	dirams	SM 0.01
Tanzania	shilling	shillings	Tanzania	T Sh	cent	cents	T Sh 0.01
Thailand	baht	baht	Thai	B	satang	satang	B 0.01
Timor-Leste	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$ ^a	cent	cents	\$0.01
Togo	franc	francs	CFA	CFAF	centime ^c	centimes	CFAF 0.01
Tonga	pa'anga	pa'anga	Tongan	T\$	seniti	seniti	T\$0.01
Trinidad and Tobago	dollar	dollars	Trinidad and Tobago	TT\$	cent	cents	TT\$0.01
Tunisia	dinar	dinars	Tunisian	TD	millime	millimes	TD 0.001
Turkey	lira	liras	Turkish	TL	kurus	kurus	TL 0.01
Turkmenistan	manat	manat	Turkmen	manat	tenge	tenge	manat 0.01
Turks and Caicos Islands	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$ ^a	cent	cents	\$0.01
Tuvalu	dollar	dollars	Australian	\$A	cent	cents	\$A 0.01
Uganda	shilling	shillings	Uganda	U Sh	cent	cents	U Sh 0.01
Ukraine	hryvnia	hryvnias	Ukrainian	Hrv	kopiyka	kopiyky	Hrv 0.01
United Arab Emirates	dirham	dirhams	U.A.E.	Dh	fil	fil	Dh 0.01
United Kingdom	pound ^d	pounds ^d	sterling ^t	£ or £stg. ^t	penny	pence	£0.01
United States	dollar	dollars	U.S.	\$ or US\$ ^a	cent	cents	\$0.01
Uruguay	peso	pesos	Uruguayan	Ur\$	centésimo	centésimos	Ur\$0.01
Uzbekistan	som	som	Uzbek	Som	tiyin	tiyin	Som 0.01
Vanuatu	vatu	vatu	Vanuatu	VT			
Venezuela, RB	bolívar	bolívares	Venezuelan	Bs	centavo	centavos	Bs 0.01
Vietnam	dong	dong	Vietnamese	D			
Wallis and Futuna Islands	franc	francs	CFP	CFPF	centime	centimes	CFPF 0.01
Yemen, Republic of	rial	rial	Yemeni	YRIs ^v	fil	fil	YRI 0.01

Country, economy, or area	CURRENCY UNITS				SUBSIDIARY UNITS		
	Singular	Plural	Adjective	Abbreviation	Singular	Plural	Value in terms of main currency
Zambia	kwacha	kwacha	Zambian	K	ngwee	ngwee	K 0.01
Zimbabwe	dollar	dollars	Zimbabwe	Z\$	cent	cents	Z\$0.01

- a. The French franc and the Spanish peseta as legal tender in Andorra have been replaced by the euro.
- b. Use the term *euro area*, not *euro zone*. It is incorrect to refer to the euro by nationality, for example, as an Austrian euro or a Belgian euro. However, one may refer to a country's holdings of euros, for example, euro (France) or euro (Germany). Use euro symbol (€) for publications.
- c. There is no subsidiary unit issued for the CFA franc. However, it is useful to retain the concept of the centime.
- d. The word *real* should be italicized to avoid confusion in such phrases as "the *real's* real exchange rate."
- e. Use US\$ instead of \$ when it is not clear that the reference is to the U.S. dollar.
- f. Singular: Pta. Plural: Ptas.
- g. The currency is the renminbi, while the currency unit is the yuan.
- h. Second subsidiary currency unit: jiao; 10 fen = 1 jiao; 10 jiao = 1 yuan.
- i. Second subsidiary currency: millième; 10 millièmes = 1 piastre.
- j. Where more than one urrency is indicated, all are circulating concurrently.
- k. Singular: Re. Plural: Rs.
- l. Singular: RI. Plural: RIs.
- m. The loti is interchangeable with the South African rand, which remains legal tender.
- n. In French, the singular and plural are the same; in Arabic and English the plural form is used.
- o. For accounting purposes, the ouguiya is also divided into the dixième (= UM 0.10) and the centième (= UM 0.01).
- p. Singular: Pre. Plural: Prs.
- q. Use the plural form *lei* before a figure (*lei 100*).
- r. Singular: SRI. Plural: SRIs.
- s. Singular: SL Re. Plural: SL Rs.
- t. *Sterling* is at times used in place of *pounds*. When used as an adjective to describe the currency, *sterling* follows *pounds* (that is, *pounds sterling*).
- u. Second subsidiary currency: chiao; 10 fen = 1 chiao.
- v. Singular: YRI. Plural: YRIs.

APPENDIX E COMMON ABBREVIATIONS

ADB	Asian Development Bank
ADF	African Development Fund
AFD	Agence Française de Développement
AfDB	African Development Bank
AFR	Africa (World Bank regional vice presidency)
AIDS	acquired immune deficiency syndrome
AMSCO	African Management Services Company
ANM	auxiliary nurse midwife
APDF	Africa Project Development Facility
APEC	Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation
ARAG	AIDS Regional Advisory Group for the Eastern Mediterranean
ASEAN	Association of Southeast Asian Nations
AU	African Union
Bank	World Bank
BCEAO	Banque Centrale des États de l’Afrique de l’Ouest
BEEPS	Business Environment and Enterprise Performance Survey
BIS	Bank for International Settlements
BPO	business process outsourcing
CAS	country assistance strategy
CBO	community-based organization
CDC	U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDD	community-driven development
CEM	Country Economic Memorandum
CFC	chlorofluorocarbon
CGAP	Consultative Group to Assist the Poor
CGIAR	Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research
CIDA	Canadian International Development Agency
CIF or c.i.f.	cost, insurance, and freight
CIS	Commonwealth of Independent States
CMU	Country Management Unit
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CPI	consumer price index
CRS	Creditor Reporting System (of the OECD)
CSO	civil society organization
CTD	Division of Control of Tropical Diseases (of the WHO)
DAC	Development Assistance Committee (of the OECD)

DALY	disability-adjusted life year
DANIDA	Danish International Development Agency
DDSR	debt and debt-service reduction
DEC	Development Economics Vice Presidency (of the World Bank)
DECDG	Development Economics Data Group (of the World Bank)
DECPG	Development Economics Development Prospects Group (of the World Bank)
DECRG	Development Economics Research Group (of the World Bank)
DFID	U.K. Department for International Development
DOTS	directly observed treatment, short course (for tuberculosis)
DPT	diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus (vaccine)
DRE	debt reduction equivalent
DRF	Debt Reduction Facility (of the IDA)
DRS	Debtor Reporting System (of the World Bank)
EAP	East Asia and Pacific (World Bank regional vice presidency)
EBRD	European Bank for Reconstruction and Development
ECA	Economic Commission for Africa (of the UN) or Europe and Central Asia (World Bank regional vice presidency)
ECB	European Central Bank
ECLAC	Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean (of the UN)
ECOWAS	Economic Community of West African States
EDA	effective development assistance
EFA	Education for All
EMRO	Eastern Mediterranean Regional Office (of the WHO)
EMS	European Monetary System
EMU	European Monetary Union
EPI	Expanded Program on Immunization
ESAC	Economic and Social Adjustment Credit or Education Sector Adjustment Credit or Energy Sector Adjustment Credit (all of the World Bank)
ESAF	Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility (of the IMF)
ESCAP	Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (of the UN)
ESW	economic and sector work
EU	European Union
EU-15	15 countries that were members of the EU before May 1, 2004
FACS	Firm Analysis and Competitiveness Survey
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization (of the UN)
FBO	faith-based organization
FCS	fragile and conflict-affected situations
FDI	foreign direct investment
FOB or f.o.b.	free on board
FOIA	Freedom of Information Act
FSAL	financial sector adjustment loan
FSAP	Financial Sector Assessment Program
FSU	former Soviet Union
FTA	free trade agreement
FTI	Fast-Track Initiative (of EFA)

FTZ	free trade zone
Fund	International Monetary Fund
G-7	Group of Seven
G-8	Group of Eight
GAIN	Global Alliance for Improved Nutrition
GATS	General Agreement on Trade in Services
GATT	General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade
GCC	Gulf Cooperation Council
GDF	<i>Global Development Finance</i>
GDP	gross domestic product
GEF	Global Environment Facility
GER	gross enrollment ratio
GIZ	German Agency for International Cooperation (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Internationale Zusammenarbeit) (replaced GTZ)
GNI	gross national income
GNP	gross national product
GNP/c	gross national product per capita
GRSP	Global Road Safety Partnership
GSP	generalized system of preferences
GTZ	German Agency for Technical Cooperation (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit) (replaced by GIZ)
GVIO	gross value of industrial output
HepB	hepatitis B vaccine
Hib	<i>haemophilus influenzae</i> type B
HIPC	heavily indebted poor countries
HIPC Initiative	Heavily Indebted Poor Countries Initiative
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HNP	Health, Nutrition, and Population (sector of the World Bank)
IBRD	International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (of the World Bank Group)
ICD	International Classification of Diseases
ICO	integrated community organization
ICOR	incremental capital-output ratio
ICSID	International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes (of the World Bank Group)
ICT	information and communication technology
IDA	International Development Association (of the World Bank Group)
IDA13	13th Replenishment of IDA
IDB	Inter-American Development Bank
IDU	injecting drug user
IEC	information, education, and communication
IF	Integrated Framework for Trade-Related Technical Assistance to Least Developed Countries
IFAD	International Fund for Agricultural Development
IFC	International Finance Corporation (of the World Bank Group)
IFI	international financial institution
IFPRI	International Food Policy Research Institute

IFSP	Integrated Food Security Program
ILO	International Labour Organization (plenary body) or International Labour Office (the secretariat and publisher)
IMCI	integrated management of childhood illness
IMF	International Monetary Fund
IMR	infant mortality rate
IOM	International Organization for Migration
I-PRSP	interim PRSP
IT	information technology
ITD	International Tax Dialogue
JICA	Japan International Cooperation Agency
KAP	knowledge, attitudes, and practices
kph	kilometers per hour
LAC	Latin America and the Caribbean (World Bank regional vice presidency)
LDOD	total long-term debt outstanding and disbursed
LIBOR	London interbank offered rate
LLI	local-level institution
LSA	livelihood support activities
M&A	mergers and acquisitions
M&E	monitoring and evaluation
MCH	maternal and child health
MDB	multilateral development bank
MDGs	Millennium Development Goals
Mercosur	Southern Cone Common Market (Mercado Común del Sur)
MFI	microfinance institution
MIGA	Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (of the World Bank Group)
MIS	management information system
MMR	maternal mortality ratio
MNA or MENA	Middle East and North Africa (World Bank regional vice presidency)
MNC	multinational corporation
mph	miles per hour
MRY	most recent year
MSM	men who have sex with men
MTCT	mother-to-child transmission
MYRA	multiyear rescheduling agreement
NAFTA	North American Free Trade Agreement
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NCD	noncommunicable disease
NEPAD	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NGO	nongovernmental organization
NIC	newly industrialized country
NIE	newly industrialized economy
NIH	National Institutes of Health
NIS	newly independent state
NPV	net present value
NRM	natural resource management

O&M	operation and maintenance
OAS	Organization of American States
OAU	Organization of African Unity
ODA	official development assistance
ODF	official development finance
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
OED	Operations Evaluation Department (World Bank)
OLS	ordinary least squares
OOPP	objective-oriented project planning
OPEC	Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries
OPV	oral polio vaccine
OVC	orphans and vulnerable children
OVI	objectively verifiable indicator
Oxfam International	an assistance organization (no need to spell out)
PAD	project appraisal document
PAHO	Pan American Health Organization
PAYG	pay as you go
PEAP	Poverty Eradication Action Plan
PETS	Public Expenditure Tracking Survey
PFPP	Policy Framework Paper
PICS	Public Information Centers and Services
PME	participatory monitoring and evaluation
PNA	participatory needs assessment
PPA	participatory poverty assessment
PPP	purchasing power parity <i>or</i> public-private partnership
PRA	participatory rural appraisal
PREM	Poverty Reduction and Economic Management (World Bank network vice presidency)
PRS	poverty reduction strategy
PRSC	Poverty Reduction Support Credit
PRSP	Poverty Reduction Strategy Paper
PTR	pupil-teacher ratio
R&D	research and development
RDS	rural development society
REER	real effective exchange rate
RPED	Regional Program on Enterprise Development
RTI	reproductive tract infection
RWSS	rural water supply and sanitation
saar	seasonally adjusted annual rate
SAC	Structural Adjustment Credit
SAF	Structural Adjustment Facility (of the IMF)
SAR	South Asia (World Bank regional vice presidency)
SDRs	special drawing rights
Sida	Swedish International Development Cooperation Authority
SMEs	small and medium enterprises
SOE	state-owned enterprise
STD	sexually transmitted disease

STEM	science, technology, engineering, and mathematics
STI	sexually transmitted infection
SWAP	sectorwide approach
SWOT	strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, threats (analysis)
TA	technical assistance
TBA	traditional birth attendant
TFR	total fertility rate
TRIPS	Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights
U5MR	under-five mortality rate
UN	United Nations
UNAIDS	Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS
UNCTAD	United Nations Conference on Trade and Development
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
UNECA	United Nations Economic Commission for Africa
UNEP	United Nations Environment Programme
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization
UNFPA	United Nations Population Fund
UNHCR	United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees
UNICEF	United Nations Children’s Fund
UNIDO	United Nations Industrial Development Organization
UNIFEM	United Nations Development Fund for Women
UNODCCP	United Nations Office for Drug Control and Crime Prevention
UNRWA	United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East
USAID	U.S. Agency for International Development
VAT	value added tax
VCT	voluntary counseling and testing
VDP	village development plan
WAEMU	West African Economic and Monetary Union
WAMU	West African Monetary Union
WBES	World Business Environment Survey
WBI	World Bank Institute
WDI	<i>World Development Indicators</i> (World Bank publication)
WDR	<i>World Development Report</i> (World Bank publication)
WFP	World Food Programme
WHO	World Health Organization
WPI	wholesale price index
WTO	World Trade Organization

APPENDIX F NAMES AND TERMS

13th Replenishment of IDA (IDA13)	
acknowledgment	not acknowledgement
acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)	
adviser	not advisor
advisory	
Africa (World Bank regional vice presidency; AFR)	
Africa Project Development Facility (APDF)	
African Development Bank (AfDB)	
African Development Fund (ADF)	
African Management Services Company (AMSCO)	
African Union (AU)	
Agence Française de Développement (AFD)	
ages	not aged, for example, children ages 10 and older
agreed-on (adj)	agreed-on price; but the price that was agreed on
AIDS Regional Advisory Group for the Eastern Mediterranean (ARAG)	
anti- (prefix) (no hyphen)	
anti-money-laundering (adj)	anti-money-laundering initiatives
appendixes	not appendices
around	Try <i>about</i> , <i>approximately</i> . <i>Around</i> should usually be restricted to mean physically near.
as	Try <i>because</i> . It is often not clear whether <i>as</i> means causation or coincidence.
Asian Development Bank (ADB)	
Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC)	
Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN)	
assure	Distinguish between <i>assure</i> , <i>ensure</i> , and <i>insure</i> .
at-risk (adj)	at-risk projects; but projects that are at risk
auxiliary nurse midwife (ANM)	
balance of payments (adj; n)	
Bank for International Settlements (BIS)	
Bank-Fund; but World Bank–International Monetary Fund (adj)	Bank-Fund Annual Meetings; Joint World Bank–International Monetary Fund Annual Meetings
Bank–United Nations; but Bank-UN (adj)	Bank–United Nations partnership; Bank-UN partnership
Bank-wide	Bank-wide review
Banque Centrale des États de l’Afrique de l’Ouest (BCEAO)	
base-year (adj)	
best-practice (adj); best practice (n)	best-practice policies; industry best practices
between	Use <i>between</i> for one-to-one relationships, regardless of the number of items (for example, “NAFTA is a treaty between Canada, Mexico, and the United States.”). Use <i>among</i> to express a relationship of an item to many surrounding items collectively.

birthrate (n)	
birthweight	
Board of Executive Directors (World Bank); the Board	
breakdown (n), break down (v)	
breakup (n), break up (v)	
breastfeed (v)	
buildup (n), build up (v)	
Business Environment and Enterprise Performance Survey (BEEPS)	
business process outsourcing (BPO)	
by-product	
Canadian International Development Agency (CIDA)	
capacity-building (adj); capacity building (n)	capacity-building initiatives; capacity building is essential
Caribbean	
case-by-case (adj)	
central bank	Lowercase unless part of a proper name.
cesarean section	
checkup (n), check up (v)	
childbearing (n, adj)	
chlorofluorocarbon (CFC)	
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)	
civil service (n, adj)	
civil society (n, adj)	
civil society organization (CSO)	
client-provider interaction	
co- (prefix) (no hyphen)	
cofounder	
cofinancing	
cogeneration	
co-invest	
co-investment	
co-investor	
Cold War	
Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS)	
community-based organization (CBO)	
community-driven (adj)	community-driven project; but the project was community driven
community-driven development (CDD)	
compare to	Try <i>compare with</i> . <i>Compare to</i> should be used only to note a likeness; <i>compare with</i> to analyze similarities and differences.
completion-point (adj); completion point (n)	completion-point status; the completion point
comprise	A whole <i>consists of</i> , <i>encircles</i> , or <i>comprises</i> its parts; the parts <i>compose</i> , <i>constitute</i> , or <i>make up</i> the whole. Never allow <i>comprised of</i> .
constitution; constitutional	Lowercase, but U.S. Constitution
Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research (CGIAR)	
Consultative Group to Assist the Poor (CGAP)	
consumer price index (CPI)	
continual	Distinguish between <i>continual</i> (means recurring often or at intervals and refers only to time) and <i>continuous</i> (means uninterrupted or unbroken and can refer to time or space).
contracting-out (n)	The contracting-out of the work was beneficial.
cooperate	

coordinate	
cost, insurance, and freight (CIF or c.i.f.)	
cost of living (n), cost-of-living (adj)	
cost-effective (adj)	
country assistance strategy (CAS)	
Country Economic Memorandum (CEM)	
Country Management Unit (CMU)	
Creditor Reporting System (CRS) of the OECD	
cross-cutting (adj)	It is a cross-cutting issue.
cross-section (n)	
cutoff (n), cut off (v)	
Danish International Development Agency (DANIDA)	
data	data are, not data is
database	
day care (n), day-care (adj)	
debt and debt-service reduction (DDSR)	
debt reduction equivalent (DRE)	
Debt Reduction Facility (DRF) of the IDA	
debt relief (n); debt-relief (adj)	provide debt relief; debt-relief program
debt service (n); debt-service (adj); debt-servicing (adj)	cost of debt service; debt-service reduction
Debtor Reporting System (DRS) of the World Bank	
decision making (n); decision-making (adj); decision maker (n)	guidelines for decision making; decision-making guidelines
Department for International Development (DFID), United Kingdom	
Deutsche Gesellschaft für Internationale Zusammenarbeit (German Agency for International Cooperation; GIZ)	Replaced GTZ
Deutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit (German Agency for Technical Cooperation; GTZ)	Replaced by GIZ
developed country (n); developed-country (adj)	developed-country financing
developing country	This term is allowed, but the use of the World Bank income classifications is preferred: low-income country (LIC); low- and middle-income country (LMIC); and upper-middle-income country (UMIC).
Development Assistance Committee (DAC) of the OECD	
Development Economics Data Group (DECDG)	
Development Economics Development Prospects Group (DECPG)	
Development Economics Research Group (DECRG)	
Development Economics Vice Presidency (DEC) of the World Bank	
dialogue	
diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus (DPT) vaccine	
directly observed treatment, short course (DOTS), for tuberculosis	
disability-adjusted life year (DALY)	
dispute-resolution (adj)	dispute-resolution techniques
distance learning centers (but headline-style caps for specific ones)	
distortional	
Division of Control of Tropical Diseases (CTD) of the WHO	
drawdown (n)	
dropout (n, adj), drop out (v)	
due to	When <i>due to</i> is used as an adverb, change to <i>because of</i> , <i>caused by</i> , <i>the result of</i> , <i>attributable to</i> . Use <i>due to</i> only as an adjective: The increase was due to higher taxes.

e.g.	Change to <i>for example</i> .
East Asia and Pacific (World Bank regional vice presidency; EAP)	
Eastern Mediterranean Regional Office (EMRO) of the WHO	
economic and sector work (ESW)	
Economic and Social Adjustment Credit (ESAC) of the World Bank	
Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP) of the UN	
Economic Commission for Africa (ECA) of the UN	
Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean (ECLAC) of the UN	
Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS)	
economic sector (n, adj)	
Education for All (EFA)	
Education Sector Adjustment Credit (ESAC) of the World Bank	
effective development assistance (EDA)	
e-mail	
end use, end user	
energy sector (n, adj)	
Energy Sector Adjustment Credit (ESAC) of the World Bank	
energy-efficient (adj)	
Enhanced HIPC Initiative	
Enhanced Structural Adjustment Facility (ESAF) of the IMF	
ensure	Distinguish between <i>assure</i> , <i>ensure</i> , and <i>insure</i> .
etc.	Change to <i>and so on</i> , <i>and so forth</i> .
ethnic group	not tribe
euro area	not euro zone
Europe and Central Asia (World Bank regional vice presidency; ECA)	
European Bank for Reconstruction and Development (EBRD)	
European Central Bank (ECB)	
European Monetary System (EMS)	
European Monetary Union (EMU)	
European Union (EU)	
EU-15	15 countries that were members of the EU before the May 1, 2004, enlargement (Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, and the United Kingdom)
ex ante, ex post	no italics
exchange rate (n, adj)	exchange rate regimes
Expanded Program on Immunization (EPI)	
ex-president	Change to <i>former president</i> .
faith-based organization (FBO)	
family planning (n, adj)	
farmworker (n, adj)	
farther	Distinguish between <i>farther</i> (for physical distance) and <i>further</i> (degree).
fast track (n), fast-track (adj)	
Fast-Track Initiative (FTI) of EFA	
fieldwork; fieldworker	
financial sector (n, adj)	
financial sector adjustment loan (FSAL)	

Financial Sector Assessment Program (FSAP)	
fine-tune (v); fine tuning (n)	
Firm Analysis and Competitiveness Survey (FACS)	
first-generation (adj)	
firsthand	
fiscal year	
floodplain	
follow-up (n, adj), follow up (v)	
Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) of the UN	
forego	Distinguish between <i>forego</i> (go before) and <i>forgo</i> (abstain from)
foreign direct investment (FDI)	
foreign exchange (adj)	
formal sector (n, adj)	
former Soviet Union (FSU)	
for-profit	
forums	not fora
Freedom of Information Act (FOIA)	
free market (n), free-market (adj)	
free on board (FOB or f.o.b.)	
free trade agreement (FTA)	
free trade zone (FTZ)	
front-line (adj)	front-line activity
full Poverty Reduction Strategy Paper (full PRSP)	
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)	Succeeded by <i>WTO</i> ; use <i>GATT</i> in historical contexts only.
General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS)	
generalized system of preferences (GSP)	
German Agency for International Cooperation (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Internationale Zusammenarbeit; GIZ)	Replaced GTZ
German Agency for Technical Cooperation (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit; GTZ)	Replaced by GIZ
Global Alliance for Improved Nutrition (GAIN)	
Global Development Finance (GDF)	
Global Environment Facility (GEF)	
Global Road Safety Partnership (GRSP)	
government	Always lowercase (for example, the German government).
gray	not grey
grassroots (n, adj)	the grassroots of society; grassroots organizations.
gross domestic product (GDP)	
gross enrollment ratio (GER)	
gross national income (GNI)	
gross national product (GNP)	
gross national product per capita (GNP/c)	
gross value of industrial output (GVIO)	
groundwater	
Group of Eight (G-8) (n, adj)	Group of Eight countries; G-8 countries (Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom, and the United States)
Group of Seven (G-7) (n, adj)	Group of Seven countries; G-7 countries (Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the United Kingdom, and the United States)
Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC)	

<i>haemophilus influenzae</i> type B (Hib)	
handmade	
handout (n, adj), hand out (v)	
hard copy (n), hardcopy (adj)	
hardline (adj), hard-liner (n)	
health care (n, adj)	health care industry; the state of health care
Health, Nutrition, and Population (World Bank sector; HNP)	
heavily indebted poor countries (HIPC)	
Heavily Indebted Poor Countries (HIPC) Initiative	
hepatitis B vaccine (HepB)	
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)	
i.e.	Change to <i>that is</i> .
IDA-only (adj)	IDA-only countries
if	Distinguish between <i>if</i> (to convey conditionality) and <i>whether</i> (to convey choice)
impact (v)	Change to <i>affect, influence, or have an effect on</i> .
in depth (adv), in-depth (adj)	
incremental capital-output ratio (ICOR)	
independently of	Change to <i>independent of</i> .
indexes	not indices
industrial countries	not industrialized countries
infant mortality rate (IMR)	
informal sector (n, adj)	
information and communication technology (ICT)	
information, education, and communication (IEC)	
information technology (IT)	
injecting drug user (IDU)	
inner city (n), inner-city (adj)	
in-service education	
integrated community organization (ICO)	
Integrated Food Security Program (IFSP)	
Integrated Framework for Trade-Related Technical Assistance to Least Developed Countries (IF)	
integrated management of childhood illness (IMCI)	
inter alia	Change to <i>among other things, among others</i> .
Inter-American Development Bank (IDB)	
interest rate (n, adj)	
interim Poverty Reduction Strategy Paper (I-PRSP)	
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) of the World Bank Group	
International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes (ICSID) of the World Bank Group	
International Classification of Diseases (ICD)	
International Development Association (IDA) of the World Bank Group	
International Finance Corporation (IFC) of the World Bank Group	IFC, not the IFC.
international financial institution (IFI)	
International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI)	
Integrated Food Security Program (IFSP)	
International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD)	

International Labour Organization (plenary body) or International Labour Office (secretariat and publisher) (ILO)	
International Monetary Fund (IMF, the Fund)	
International Organization for Migration (IOM)	
International Tax Dialogue (ITD)	
Internet	
intranet	
Japan International Cooperation Agency (JICA)	
Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS (UNAIDS)	
judgment	not judgement
kilometers per hour (kph)	
knowledge, attitudes, and practices (KAP)	
knowledge-sharing (adj); knowledge sharing (n)	knowledge-sharing activities; engage in knowledge sharing
landholder	
landmine	
landowner	
Latin America and the Caribbean (World Bank regional vice presidency; LAC)	
layoff (n), lay off (v)	
level the playing field	avoid overuse
life cycle (n), life-cycle (adj)	
lifestyle	
link (n)	not linkage
livelihood support activities (LSA)	
local-level (adj)	local-level feedback
local-level institution (LLI)	
London interbank offered rate (LIBOR)	
long term (n), long-term (adj)	in the long term; long-term forecast, but the forecast is long term
long-standing (adj)	
longtime (adj)	
low income (n), low-income (adj)	
lower-middle-income (adj)	
macroeconomic	
male-female ratio	
management information system (MIS)	
manmade	Change to <i>artificial</i> or <i>constructed</i> .
maternal and child health (MCH)	
maternal mortality ratio (MMR)	
Mediterranean	
men who have sex with men (MSM)	
mergers and acquisitions (M&A)	
micro- (prefix) (no hyphen)	microenterprise, microlending
microfinance institution (MFI)	
middle age (n), middle-aged (adj)	
middle class (n), middle-class (adj)	
Middle East and North Africa (World Bank regional vice presidency; MNA or MENA)	
middle-income (adj)	middle-income countries
miles per hour (mph)	

Millennium Development Goals (MDGs)	
monitoring and evaluation (M&E)	
more importantly	Change to <i>more important</i> .
most recent year (MRY)	
mother-to-child transmission (MTCT)	
multi- (prefix) (no hyphen)	multisectoral, multidonor
multilateral development bank (MDB)	
Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency (MIGA) of the World Bank Group	MIGA, not the MIGA
multinational corporation (MNC)	
multiyear rescheduling agreement (MYRA)	
Muslim	not Moslem
National Institutes of Health (NIH)	
nation building (n), nation-building (adj)	
nationwide	
natural resource management (NRM)	
neonatal; neonate	
net present value (NPV)	
New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD)	
newly independent state (NIS)	
newly industrialized country (NIC)	
newly industrialized economy (NIE)	
non- (prefix) (no hyphen)	noncorrupt, noncrisis, nonexistent, nonlending
noncommunicable disease (NCD)	
nongovernmental organization (NGO)	
non-oil-exporting (adj)	non-oil-exporting country
North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA)	
North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)	
objectively verifiable indicator (OVI)	
objective-oriented project planning (OOPP)	
official development assistance (ODA)	
official development finance (ODF)	
ordinary least squares (OLS)	
on the ground	avoid; try <i>in the field</i>
one-stop shopping	avoid overuse
ongoing (adj)	ongoing investigation
onlending	
online (adj, adv)	online research; working online
operation and maintenance (O&M)	
Operations Evaluation Department (OED) of the World Bank	
oral polio vaccine (OPV)	
Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD)	
Organization of African Unity (OAU)	Succeeded by the African Union; use in historical contexts only.
Organization of American States (OAS)	
Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)	
orphans and vulnerable children (OVC)	
outsource	
over- (prefix) (no hyphen)	overestimate, overenroll, overwork
Pan American Health Organization (PAHO)	

participatory monitoring and evaluation (PME)	
participatory needs assessment (PNA)	
participatory poverty assessment (PPA)	
participatory rural appraisal (PRA)	
pay as you go (PAYG); pay-as-you-go (adj)	
payoff (n), pay off (v)	
per annum	Change to a year or <i>per year</i> .
percent; percentage	Use <i>percent</i> with defined numbers (“only 5 percent of the people voted”). Use <i>percentage</i> with undefined quantities (“only a small percentage of people voted”) and <i>percentage points</i> (“the tax rate increased by 10 percentage points”).
phaseout (n); phase out (v)	the program phaseout will occur; we will phase out the program
Policy Framework Paper (PFP)	
policy making (n); policy-making (adj); policy maker (n)	an important role in policy making; policy-making guidelines; a gathering of policy makers
policyholder	
post- (prefix) (no hyphen)	postconflict, postreform, but post–World War II
Poverty Eradication Action Plan (PEAP)	
poverty reduction (n, adj)	
Poverty Reduction and Economic Management (World Bank network vice presidency; PREM)	
poverty reduction strategy (PRS)	
Poverty Reduction Strategy Paper (PRSP)	
Poverty Reduction Support Credit (PRSC)	
pre- (prefix) (no hyphen)	precrisis, prereform, prewar
preventive	not preventative
primary-school-age (adj)	primary-school-age children
private sector (n, adj)	private sector involvement; in the private sector
problem solving (n); problem-solving (adj)	engage in problem solving; problem-solving capacity
pro-development	
project appraisal document (PAD)	
pro-poor	
Public Expenditure Tracking Survey (PETS)	
public sector (n, adj)	in the public sector; public sector involvement
pupil-teacher ratio (PTR)	
quasi- (prefix) (use hyphen)	quasi-professional, quasi-public
rain forest	
rainwater	
re- (prefix) (no hyphen)	reassess, reestablish, rework
real effective exchange rate (REER)	
Regional Program on Enterprise Development (RPED)	
reproductive tract infection (RTI)	
research and development (R&D)	
right wing (n), right-wing (adj)	
risk taker (n), risk taking (n), risk-taking (adj)	
risk-bearing (adj)	risk-bearing capacity
runoff (n), run off (v)	
rural development society (RDS)	
rural water supply and sanitation (RWSS)	
safeguard (n, adj, v)	safeguard policies

safety net (n, adj)	
school-age (adj)	
science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (STEM)	
seasonally adjusted annual rate (saar)	
sectorwide approach (SWAP)	
sewerage	Use <i>sewerage</i> , not <i>sewage</i> , when referring to infrastructure and services.
sexually transmitted disease (STD)	
sexually transmitted infection (STI)	
short term (n); short-term (adj)	in the short term; short-term prospects, but plans are short term
since	Use <i>because</i> for causation if confusion with the temporal meaning (“since last winter”) could occur.
-size (suffix), not -sized	medium-size
small and medium enterprises (SMEs)	
social sector (n, adj)	
socioeconomic	
sociopolitical	
soft copy (n), soft-copy (adj)	
South Asia (World Bank regional vice presidency; SAR)	
Southern Cone Common Market (Mercado Común del Sur; Mercosur)	
special drawing rights (SDRs)	
stand-alone (adj)	stand-alone loans
start-up (n, adj), start up (v)	
state-owned enterprise (SOE)	
Strategic Compact	
Strategic Directions Paper	
strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, threats (SWOT) analysis	
Structural Adjustment Credit (SAC)	
Structural Adjustment Facility (SAF) of the IMF	
sub- (prefix) (no hyphen)	subcommittee, subdistrict, subregion
Sub-Saharan Africa	
Swedish International Development Cooperation Authority (Sida)	
take-off (n, adj); take off (v)	the take-off point; the economy will take off
teacher-student ratio	
technical assistance (TA)	
terms-of-trade (adj); terms of trade (n)	
that, which	Distinguish between <i>that</i> (for restrictive clauses) and <i>which</i> (for nonrestrictive)
Third World	Change to <i>developing countries</i> .
time frame	
total fertility rate (TFR)	
total long-term debt outstanding and disbursed (LDOD)	
toward	not towards
Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (TRIPS)	
traditional birth attendant (TBA)	
transport	Use <i>transport</i> for goods, <i>transportation</i> for people.
Tropical Disease Research Program	
turnaround (n)	
under- (prefix) (no hyphen)	underestimate, underfinance, underregistration

under way	The program is under way.
underdeveloped countries	Change to <i>developing countries</i> .
under-five mortality rate (U5MR)	
United Nations (UN)	
United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF)	
United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD)	
United Nations Development Fund for Women (UNIFEM)	
United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)	
United Nations Economic Commission for Africa (UNECA)	
United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)	
United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP)	
United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)	
United Nations Industrial Development Organization (UNIDO)	
United Nations Office for Drug Control and Crime Prevention (UNODCCP)	
United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)	
United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East (UNRWA)	
United States (n); U.S. (adj)	the United States; U.S. policy
upper-middle-income (adj)	
U.S. Agency for International Development (USAID)	
U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)	
value added tax (VAT)	
vice president (no hyphen)	
village development plan (VDP)	
vis-à-vis	Change to <i>compared with, in relation to, relative to</i> .
viz.	Change to <i>namely, that is</i> .
voluntary counseling and testing (VCT)	
web page	
webcasting facilities	
website	
well-being	
West African Economic and Monetary Union (WAEMU)	
West African Monetary Union (WAMU)	
where	Reserve <i>where</i> for places; try <i>at, on, in which</i> .
whether	See comments at <i>if</i> .
which	See comments at <i>that</i> .
while	Try <i>although</i> or <i>whereas</i> for clarity when <i>at the same time</i> as is not what is meant.
wholesale price index (WPI)	
-wide (suffix) (no hyphen unless with proper noun)	worldwide, sectorwide, Bank-wide
wide-ranging (adj)	wide-ranging effects, but the effects are wide ranging
with	Try <i>because of</i> or <i>at the same time as</i> . It is often not clear whether <i>with</i> means causation or coincidence, or nothing.
workday (n)	
workforce (n)	
workload (n)	
workplace (n)	

World Bank	not the Bank
World Bank Institute (WBI)	WBI, not the WBI
World Bank–International Monetary Fund, but Bank-Fund	Joint World Bank–International Monetary Fund Annual Meetings; Bank-Fund Annual Meetings
World Business Environment Survey (WBES)	
World Conference on Religion and Peace	
World Council of Churches	
<i>World Development Indicators (WDI)</i>	
<i>World Development Report (WDR)</i>	
World Faiths Development Dialogue	
World Food Programme (WFP)	
World Health Organization (WHO)	
World Trade Organization (WTO)	
World Wide Web; the Web; but web page and website worldview	

APPENDIX G ALTERNATIVE WORDS AND PHRASES

The redundant expressions marked with a dagger (†) are incorrect and should be changed. Alternative expressions for other words are meant as suggestions.

WORD OR PHRASE	ALTERNATIVE
accorded	<i>gave</i>
accordingly	<i>therefore, so</i>
adequate number of	<i>enough</i>
adjacent to	<i>next to</i>
†advance planning	<i>planning</i>
†advance reservation	<i>reservation</i>
afford an opportunity	<i>allow, let</i>
afforded	<i>gave</i>
aforementioned	<i>this, these</i>
as a means of	<i>to</i>
as a result of	<i>because</i>
at an early date	<i>soon</i>
at the present time	<i>now</i>
at the time	<i>when</i>
at this (that) point in time	<i>now (then)</i>
(are/is) authorized	<i>may</i>
be in a position to	<i>can</i>
be in receipt of	<i>have, received</i>
beneficial aspects	<i>benefits</i>
†big in size	<i>big, large</i>
†blend together	<i>blend</i>
by means of	<i>by, with</i>
†(in) close proximity to	<i>near</i>
†collaborate together	<i>collaborate</i>
comes into conflict	<i>conflicts</i>
†conclusive proof	<i>proof</i>
†consensus of opinion	<i>consensus</i>
†critically important	<i>critical</i>
†current incumbent	<i>incumbent</i>
demonstrate	<i>show</i>
despite the fact that	<i>although</i>
due to the fact that	<i>because</i>
during such time as	<i>while</i>
†during the course of	<i>during</i>
effectuate	<i>bring about</i>
employ	<i>use</i>

WORD OR PHRASE	ALTERNATIVE
(are/is) empowered	<i>may</i>
[†] end result	<i>result</i>
endeavor	<i>try</i>
[†] exact same	<i>same</i>
(an) excessive number of	<i>too many</i>
[†] few in number	<i>few</i>
for a period of	<i>for</i>
for the purpose of	<i>for, to</i>
for the reason that	<i>because</i>
foregoing	<i>this, these</i>
forthwith	<i>immediately</i>
[†] free gift	<i>gift</i>
furnish	<i>give, send</i>
[†] future plans	<i>plans</i>
[†] future prospects	<i>prospects</i>
[†] gather together	<i>gather</i>
give consideration to	<i>consider</i>
[†] great majority	<i>most, majority (if more than 50 percent)</i>
have a need for	<i>need</i>
herein	<i>here</i>
heretofore	<i>up to this time</i>
in a position to	<i>can, has, have</i>
in agreement with	<i>agree</i>
inasmuch as	<i>because</i>
in a timely manner	<i>on time, promptly</i>
in case	<i>if</i>
[†] individual person	<i>person</i>
in lieu of	<i>instead of, in place of</i>
in order for	<i>for</i>
in order that	<i>that</i>
in order to	<i>to</i>
in regard to	<i>about</i>
interface with	<i>deal with, work with, meet</i>
in terms of	<i>by, in, of, on, for, about, in relation to, through, with regard to</i>
interpose an objection	<i>object</i>
in the absence of	<i>without</i>
in the case of	<i>in</i>
in the course of	<i>during, in</i>
in the event that	<i>if</i>
in the interest of	<i>for, to</i>
in the near future	<i>soon</i>
in view of the fact that	<i>because, given that</i>
is applicable to	<i>applies</i>
[†] join together	<i>join</i>
liaise with	<i>coordinate with</i>
limited number	<i>few</i>

WORD OR PHRASE	ALTERNATIVE
locality	<i>place</i>
magnitude	<i>size</i>
majority of	<i>most</i>
make a decision	<i>decide</i>
make a determination	<i>determine</i>
make an adjustment	<i>adjust</i>
make provision for	<i>provide</i>
make use of	<i>use</i>
manmade	<i>artificial, constructed</i>
(the) manner in which	<i>how, the way</i>
†merge together	<i>merge</i>
minimize	<i>decrease, lessen, reduce</i>
†mutual cooperation	<i>cooperation</i>
necessitate	<i>need, require</i>
†new innovation	<i>innovation</i>
not in a position to	<i>cannot, unable to</i>
not later than	<i>by</i>
not much	<i>little</i>
notwithstanding the fact that	<i>although, even though</i>
occasion (v)	<i>cause</i>
participate	<i>take part</i>
†past experience, past history	<i>experience, history</i>
period of two weeks	<i>two weeks</i>
†personal opinion	<i>opinion</i>
pertaining to	<i>about, of, on</i>
point in time	<i>point, time</i>
possesses	<i>has</i>
prior to	<i>before</i>
provided that	<i>if</i>
purchase	<i>buy</i>
pursuant to	<i>under</i>
pursuant to our agreement	<i>as we agreed</i>
†real fact	<i>fact</i>
recapitulate	<i>sum up</i>
†recur again	<i>recur</i>
†refer back	<i>refer</i>
relocation	<i>move</i>
remainder	<i>rest</i>
remuneration	<i>pay, payment</i>
render	<i>give, make</i>
†revert back	<i>revert</i>
serves as	<i>is</i>
solicit	<i>ask for</i>
state-of-the-art	<i>advanced, latest</i>
take action	<i>act</i>
take into consideration	<i>consider</i>
†temporary reprieve	<i>reprieve</i>
thereof	<i>its, their</i>

WORD OR PHRASE	ALTERNATIVE
transmit	<i>send</i>
transpire	<i>happen, occur, take place</i>
until such time as	<i>until</i>
†usual custom	<i>custom</i>
utilize	<i>use</i>
verbatim	<i>exact, word for word</i>
†visible to the eye	<i>visible</i>
†vitaly important	<i>vital</i>
with a view to	<i>to</i>
without further delay	<i>now, right away, immediately</i>
with reference to	<i>about</i>
with respect to	<i>about, on</i>
with the exception of	<i>except for</i>
with the knowledge that	<i>knowing</i>

APPENDIX H WORLD BANK MAP GUIDELINES

These guidelines are provided by the Cartography unit. Areas of particular importance are maps of India and maps showing India and Pakistan.

BOUNDARIES

Three styles are used to differentiate boundaries:

- **Solid (no dashes), for undisputed international borders; most of the world**
- **Tightly dashed, for disputed borders; seven areas**
 - Between Western Sahara and Morocco
 - Between India and Pakistan
 - Between China and India
 - Between the Democratic Republic of Korea and the Republic of Korea
 - Surrounding Abyei between Sudan and South Sudan
- **Dotted, for the “Line of Control” in Kashmir between Pakistani- and Indian-controlled areas**

Special cases

- Cyprus is shown as one nation.
- Only four lakes show boundaries: Chad, Malawi, Tanganyika, and Victoria.
- Boundary between Ecuador and Peru is solid.
- Boundary between the Arab Republic of Egypt and Sudan near the Red Sea does *not* curve north into Egypt but follows the parallel all the way to the coast; the “Administrative Boundary” is not shown.
- Boundary between Saudi Arabia and the Republic of Yemen is solid.
- Boundary between the Republic of Yemen and Oman is solid.
- Timor-Leste/Indonesia show two international boundaries to include the Oecussi enclave.
- *Never on World Bank maps:* the Kuril Islands and the Spratly Islands.
- Kosovo and South Sudan are shown as sovereign.
- *For maps of Israel, West Bank and Gaza, and the Syrian Arab Republic, consult Map Design staff.*
- No maps should show the country of India (other than as part of the region or the world). Individual province maps are acceptable; however, the provinces of Jammu Kashmir, Azad Jammu Kashmir, and Arunachal Pradesh should not be depicted in maps and should not appear in tables, figures, or text.

NAMES

Territories

The convention on maps is to use a smaller, italic type to differentiate between territories and sovereign nations and identify the parent nation in parentheses after the name of the territory. *[No periods are used in the abbreviations of the parent country, which is an acceptable departure from this style guide]:*

- American Samoa (US)
- Aruba (Neth)

- Bermuda (UK)
- Bonaire (Neth) [formerly part of Netherlands Antilles (Neth)]
- Cayman Islands (UK)
- Channel Islands (UK)
- Curaçao (Neth) [formerly part of Netherlands Antilles (Neth)]
- Faeroe Islands (Den)
- French Guiana (Fr)
- French Polynesia (Fr)
- Gibraltar (UK)
- Greenland (Den)
- Guadeloupe (Fr)
- Guam (US)
- Isle of Man (UK)
- Martinique (Fr)
- Mayotte (Fr)
- New Caledonia (Fr)
- Northern Mariana Islands (US) [can abbreviate "Northern" to "N."]
- Puerto Rico (US)
- Réunion (Fr)
- U.S. Virgin Islands (US)
- Western Sahara [previously Former Spanish Sahara]

Countries [*Inconsistencies between the following list and this style guide are acceptable in maps.*]

- The Bahamas
- Brunei Darussalam
- Dem. Rep. of Congo [no "the"; formerly Zaire]
- Congo [not Rep. of Congo, or People's Rep. of Congo]
- Côte d'Ivoire
- Czech Republic
- Arab Rep. of Egypt
- The Gambia
- Islamic Republic of Iran [or I.R. of Iran]
- Dem. People's Rep. of Korea [or D.P.R. of Korea]
- Rep. of Korea
- Kosovo
- Lao P.D.R.
- FYR Macedonia [no periods in FYR]
- Federated States of Micronesia [spell it out]
- Montenegro [former Serbia and Montenegro]
- The Netherlands
- Russian Federation
- São Tomé and Príncipe
- Serbia [former Serbia and Montenegro]

- Slovak Republic
- South Sudan
- Syrian Arab Rep.
- Timor-Leste [former East Timor]
- R.B. de Venezuela
- Vietnam (one word)
- Rep. of Yemen

Special cases

- Hong Kong is “Hong Kong SAR, China.”
- Macao is “Macao SAR, China.”
- Taiwan is never identified with text on the map, except when all the Provinces of China are named; in that case, Taiwan is named in the same manner.
- West Bank and Gaza: use same type style as for territories.
- Antarctica: use same type style as for territories.
- Kaliningrad enclave is to be labeled “Russian Fed.” and can be smaller size.

COLORING

Disputed territories

- Falkland Islands are always colored gray for “No Data.”
- Antarctica, South Georgia, South Sandwich, and any other land south of 60S is always colored gray to indicate no data.
- Western Sahara is always colored gray to indicate “No Data.”
- Taiwan is always colored with China.
- South of the Kashmir Line of Control is always colored with India.
- North of the Kashmir Line of Control is always colored with Pakistan.



- The two disputed areas between China and India are to be colored so as to appear to be visually halfway between the two countries' colors; color for disputed areas should be the same as India and China only when India and China themselves are the same color.
- Abyei (Sudan/South Sudan) is colored using the same method as for the India/China disputed areas.

Other details

- Kerguelen (Fr.) in S. Indian Ocean near Antarctica is colored gray and unnamed.
- Galapagos Islands is always colored with Ecuador.
- Spitzbergen (Svalbaard) is always colored with Norway.
- Azores is always colored with Portugal.
- Canary Islands is always colored with Spain.
- Socotra Island is always colored with the Republic of Yemen.
- Andaman and Nicobar islands are always colored with India.
- Kaliningrad enclave is always colored with Russia.

APPENDIX I WORLD INTEGRATED TRADE SOLUTION (WITS) COUNTRY AND ECONOMY NAMES AND INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ORGANIZATION (ISO) CODES

The country code table includes the World Integrated Trade Solution (WITS) country names for statistical purposes and both the International Standards Organization (ISO) 3-digit alphabetic codes and the United Nations Statistics Division (UNSD) 3-digit equivalent numeric codes. The names and codes are used in all three databases.

*Note: The WITS country names in this list do not correspond to the World Bank listing in **appendix C** of this guide. The WITS list is simply for use by editors and proofreaders who spot check ISO and UNSD codes in figures and tables.*

COUNTRY OR ECONOMY NAME	COUNTRY CODES	
	ISO3	UN
Afghanistan	AFG	004
Albania	ALB	008
Algeria	DZA	012
American Samoa	ASM	016
Andorra	AND	020
Angola	AGO	024
Anguila	AIA	660
Antigua and Barbuda	ATG	028
Argentina	ARG	032
Armenia	ARM	051
Aruba	ABW	533
Australia	AUS	036
Austria	AUT	040
Azerbaijan	AZE	031
Bahamas, The	BHS	044
Bahrain	BHR	048
Bangladesh	BGD	050
Barbados	BRB	052
Belarus	BLR	112
Belgium	BEL	056
Belgium-Luxembourg	BLX	058
Belize	BLZ	084
Benin	BEN	204
Bermuda	BMU	060
Bhutan	BTN	064
Bolivia	BOL	068
Bosnia and Herzegovina	BIH	070
Botswana	BWA	072
Br. Antr. Terr	BAT	080

COUNTRY OR ECONOMY NAME	COUNTRY CODES	
	ISO3	UN
Brazil	BRA	076
British Indian Ocean Ter.	IOT	086
British Virgin Islands	VGB	092
Brunei	BRN	096
Bulgaria	BGR	100
Burkina Faso	BFA	854
Burundi	BDI	108
Cambodia	KHM	116
Cameroon	CMR	120
Canada	CAN	124
Cape Verde	CPV	132
Cayman Islands	CYM	136
Central African Republic	CAF	140
Chad	TCD	148
Chile	CHL	152
China	CHN	156
Christmas Island	CXR	162
Cocos (Keeling) Islands	CCK	166
Colombia	COL	170
Comoros	COM	174
Congo, Dem. Rep.	ZAR	180
Congo, Rep.	COG	178
Cook Islands	COK	184
Costa Rica	CRI	188
Cote d'Ivoire	CIV	384
Croatia	HRV	191
Cuba	CUB	192
Cyprus	CYP	196
Czech Republic	CZE	203
Czechoslovakia	CSK	200
Denmark	DNK	208
Djibouti	DJI	262
Dominica	DMA	212
Dominican Republic	DOM	214
East Timor	TMP	626
Ecuador	ECU	218
Egypt, Arab Rep.	EGY	818
El Salvador	SLV	222
Equatorial Guinea	GNQ	226
Eritrea	ERI	232
Estonia	EST	233
Ethiopia (excludes Eritrea)	ETH	231
Ethiopia (includes Eritrea)	ETF	230
European Union	EUN	918
Faeroe Islands	FRO	234
Falkland Island	FLK	238
Fiji	FJI	242

COUNTRY OR ECONOMY NAME	COUNTRY CODES	
	ISO3	UN
Finland	FIN	246
Fm Panama Cz	PCZ	592
Fm Rhod Nyas	ZW1	717
Fm Tanganyik	TAN	835
Fm Vietnam Dr	VDR	868
Fm Vietnam Rp	SVR	866
Fm Zanz-Pemb	ZPM	836
Fr. So. Ant. Tr	ATF	260
France	FRA	250
Free Zones	FRE	838
French Guiana	GUF	254
French Polynesia	PYF	258
Gabon	GAB	266
Gambia, The	GMB	270
Gaza Strip	GAZ	274
Georgia	GEO	268
German Democratic Republic	DDR	278
Germany	DEU	276
Ghana	GHA	288
Gibraltar	GIB	292
Greece	GRC	300
Greenland	GRL	304
Grenada	GRD	308
Guadeloupe	GLP	312
Guam	GUM	316
Guatemala	GTM	320
Guinea	GIN	324
Guinea-Bissau	GNB	624
Guyana	GUY	328
Haiti	HTI	332
Holy See	VAT	336
Honduras	HND	340
Hong Kong, China	HKG	344
Hungary	HUN	348
Iceland	ISL	352
India	IND	356
Indonesia	IDN	360
Iran, Islamic Rep.	IRN	364
Iraq	IRQ	368
Ireland	IRL	372
Israel	ISR	376
Italy	ITA	380
Jamaica	JAM	388
Japan	JPN	392
Jhonston Island	JTN	396
Jordan	JOR	400
Kazakhstan	KAZ	398

COUNTRY OR ECONOMY NAME	COUNTRY CODES	
	ISO3	UN
Kenya	KEN	404
Kiribati	KIR	296
Korea, Dem. Rep.	PRK	408
Korea, Rep.	KOR	410
Kuwait	KWT	414
Kyrgyz Republic	KGZ	417
Lao PDR	LAO	418
Latvia	LVA	428
Lebanon	LBN	422
Lesotho	LSO	426
Liberia	LBR	430
Libya	LBY	434
Liechtenstein	LIE	438
Lithuania	LTU	440
Luxembourg	LUX	442
Macao	MAC	446
Macedonia, FYR	MKD	807
Madagascar	MDG	450
Malawi	MWI	454
Malaysia	MYS	458
Maldives	MDV	462
Mali	MLI	466
Malta	MLT	470
Marshall Islands	MHL	584
Martinique	MTQ	474
Mauritania	MRT	478
Mauritius	MUS	480
Mexico	MEX	484
Micronesia, Fed. Sts.	FSM	583
Midway Islands	MID	488
Moldova	MDA	498
Monaco	MCO	492
Mongolia	MNG	496
Montserrat	MSR	500
Morocco	MAR	504
Mozambique	MOZ	508
Myanmar	MMR	104
Namibia	NAM	516
Nauru	NRU	520
Nepal	NPL	524
Netherlands	NLD	528
Netherlands Antilles	ANT	530
Neutral Zone	NZE	536
New Caledonia	NCL	540
New Zealand	NZL	554
Nicaragua	NIC	558
Niger	NER	562

COUNTRY OR ECONOMY NAME	COUNTRY CODES	
	ISO3	UN
Nigeria	NGA	566
Niue	NIU	570
Norfolk Island	NFK	574
Northern Mariana Islands	MNP	580
Norway	NOR	578
Oman	OMN	512
Pacific Islands	PCE	582
Pakistan	PAK	586
Palau	PLW	585
Panama	PAN	591
Papua New Guinea	PNG	598
Paraguay	PRY	600
Pen Malaysia	PMY	459
Peru	PER	604
Philippines	PHL	608
Pitcairn	PCN	612
Poland	POL	616
Portugal	PRT	620
Puerto Rico	PRI	630
Qatar	QAT	634
Reunion	REU	638
Romania	ROM	642
Russian Federation	RUS	643
Rwanda	RWA	646
Ryukyu Is	RYU	647
Sabah	SBH	461
Saint Helena	SHN	654
Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla-Aru	KN1	658
Saint Pierre and Miquelon	SPM	666
Samoa	WSM	882
San Marino	SMR	674
Sao Tome and Principe	STP	678
Sarawak	SWK	457
Saudi Arabia	SAU	682
Senegal	SEN	686
Seychelles	SYC	690
Sierra Leone	SLE	694
SIKKIM	SIK	698
Singapore	SGP	702
Slovak Republic	SVK	703
Slovenia	SVN	705
Solomon Islands	SLB	090
Somalia	SOM	706
South Africa	ZAF	710
Soviet Union	SVU	810
Spain	ESP	724
Special Categories	SPE	839

COUNTRY OR ECONOMY NAME	COUNTRY CODES	
	ISO3	UN
Sri Lanka	LKA	144
St. Kitts and Nevis	KNA	659
St. Lucia	LCA	662
St. Vincent and the Grenadines	VCT	670
Sudan	SDN	736
Suriname	SUR	740
Svalbard and Jan Mayen Is	SJM	744
Swaziland	SWZ	748
Sweden	SWE	752
Switzerland	CHE	756
Syrian Arab Republic	SYR	760
Taiwan	TWN	158
Tajikistan	TJK	762
Tanzania	TZA	834
Thailand	THA	764
Togo	TGO	768
Tokelau	TKL	772
Tonga	TON	776
Trinidad and Tobago	TTO	780
Tunisia	TUN	788
Turkey	TUR	792
Turkmenistan	TKM	795
Turks and Caicos Isl.	TCA	796
Tuvalu	TUV	798
Uganda	UGA	800
Ukraine	UKR	804
United Arab Emirates	ARE	784
United Kingdom	GBR	826
United States	USA	840
Unspecified	UNS	898
Uruguay	URY	858
Us Msc.Pac.I	USP	849
Uzbekistan	UZB	860
Vanuatu	VUT	548
Venezuela	VEN	862
Vietnam	VNM	704
Virgin Islands (U.S.)	VIR	850
Wake Island	WAK	872
Wallis and Futura Isl.	WLF	876
Western Sahara	ESH	732
World	WLD	000
Yemen Democratic	YDR	720
Yemen, Rep.	YEM	887
Yugoslavia	SER	891
Yugoslavia, FR (Serbia/Montene	YUG	890
Zambia	ZMB	894
Zimbabwe	ZWE	716

This page intentionally left blank

INDEX

References are to section numbers and Appendixes (App.).

A

“AA,” 2.49
abbreviations, 8.1–.9, App. E
 of Bank regional vice presidencies, use of, 8.3
 capitalization of, 8.8
 commonly known abbreviations, 8.2, App. E
 of country names, 7.13, 8.5, App. C
 of currency types, 9.14
 EU-10, 8.9
 in figures, 13.5, 13.9
 first occurrence in book vs. in each chapter, 8.2
 of foreign organizations’ names, 7.9 G-20, 8.9
 of geographic regions, 8.3, 8.4
 in headings, 11.5
 of inclusive numbers, 9.6
 in indexes, 17.5
 list of, placement in book, 3.1
 in mathematical expressions, 15.4
 of numerical units, 9.7
 in parentheses after spelled out words, 8.2
 postal abbreviations, 8.6
 in tables, 14.6, 14.8, 14.11, 14.12
 “the” as initial word prior to, 8.7
 use of, 8.2
 of U.S. states, 8.6
 word division of, 7.44
about the authors or editors, 3.1
access dates for URLs and e-mails, 6.3
acknowledgments
 placement of, 3.1
 professional titles in, 7.11
acronyms
 in indexes, 17.5
 list of, App. E
 “the” as initial word prior to, 8.7
adjectives
 U.S. or U.K. as, 8.5
Adobe Acrobat. See PDFs
A-level heading, 11.1
alignment of column heads, 14.10
alphabetization of index, 17.7
alternatives
 use of slash, 5.29
 words and phrases to use as alternatives, App. G
ALWD *Citation Manual: A Professional System of Citation*, 7.24, 16.12

“and/or” structure, 5.29
and others, 16.2
annexes, 3.1, 3.3
 boxes in, 12.3
 numbering of figures in, 13.3
 numbering of tables in, 14.3
appendixes
 boxes in, 12.3
 indexing of, 17.2
 numbering of figures in, 13.3
 numbering of tables in, 14.3
 placement of, 3.1, 3.3
articles
 “the” as initial word prior to abbreviations, 8.7
 “the” at front of periodical titles, 7.22
articles and essays. See periodicals
artwork. See figures and illustrations
author-date references, 4.2, 5.28, 12.7, 13.21, 16.2
author queries
 on blank cells in tables, 14.18
 on comparison of decimals, 14.19
 on missing source information, 16.6
 reprint permission needed, 4.1
 on shortening of text boxes, 12.2
 from text editing, 2.36, 2.40
authors of sources
 multiple authors, 16.8, 16.16
 names of, 16.2, 16.7
 single author, 16.15
 tables, indication of authors for, 14.21
automatic hyphenation, 2.35, 5.18, 7.49
axes in figures, 13.7, 13.11–.15
 label of x-axis, 13.15
 titles of, 13.13, 13.14
 zero in, 13.11

B

back matter
 order and placement of, 3.1
 Web-based publications, 3.6
Bank. See World Bank Group
bibliographies, 13.21, 16.5
 distinguished from reference lists, 16.5
 placement of, 3.1, 3.4
 source documentation, 4.2
billions, 9.12
blank cells in tables, 14.18
block quotations, 10.6

blogs
 in source documentation, 16.38
 titles of, 7.27
The Bluebook: A Uniform System of Citation, 7.24, 16.12
boldface
 names of World Bank initiatives, programs, projects, etc., 7.6
books. See also titles of works
 examples of source citations, 16.15–.25
 parts of the book, 3.1–.6. See also *specific parts* (e.g., *table of contents*)
 World Bank Studies treated as, 16.25
boxes. See text boxes
brackets, 5.24–.28
 around monetary amounts, 9.14
 in mathematical expressions, 5.27
 for parentheses within parentheses, 5.25
 punctuation, 5.3
brand names, 7.15
bulleted lists, 5.34

C

callouts in place of graphics, 2.33
capitalization
 of abbreviations, 8.8
 after colon, 5.13
 in axis title, 13.13
 of box titles, 12.4
 of bulleted lists, 5.34
 of column heads in tables, 14.9
 of compound words, 7.37
 of database titles, 7.26
 of electronic publication titles, 7.25
 of English-language print publications, 7.16
 of figure titles, 13.4
 of foreign-language publications, 7.28
 of foreign organizations’ names, 7.9
 of headings, 11.6
 in indexes, 17.3
 of Note, 13.22, 14.23
 of public document titles, 7.24
 of quotation’s initial letter, 10.5
 of regions, 7.12
 of Source or Sources, 14.21
 of stub entries in tables, 14.13
 of table titles, 14.5
 of titles of works, 7.16, 7.20, 7.23

type of, production editor to specify, 2.5, 2.30
of unit indicator in table, 14.7
of website, web page, and blog titles, 7.27
of World Bank initiatives, loans, programs, projects, and strategies, 7.6
of World Bank unit names, 7.5
cardinal numbers, treatment of, 9.1
Cartography and clearance of maps, 2.22
Category 1 publications, 1
Category 2 publications, 1
Category 3 publications, 1, 13.26, App. B.2. *See also* World Bank Studies
CD-ROMs. *See* electronic publications
century changes in year ranges, 9.17
chapters
annexes, 3.1, 3.3
citation of, in source documentation, 16.19
referring to by number, 9.1
titles of, 7.19, 11.1
Character Map for minus sign, 5.23, 15.22
characters. *See* symbols
charts. *See* figures and illustrations
checklists
author's, App. A.6
editorial, 2.5, 2.30, App. A.1, App. A.6
figures, editing of, 13.27
proofreading, 2.7, 2.46, 2.47, App. A.5, App. B.1–2
quality control check, App. A.8a–8b
The Chicago Manual of Style, 16th ed., as editorial reference, 1
citation. *See* source documentation
city names. *See* place names
cleanup instructions for copyeditors, 2.40, App. A.4
client of World Bank
Developmental Editing Checklist for, App. A.1
page proof revisions by, 2.14
queries to. *See* author queries
review by, 2.9, 2.38
final approval, 2.18
number of rounds, 2.5, 2.17, 2.30, 2.38
number of rounds during editorial phase, 2.11
revisions by, marked as "AA," 2.49
role of, 2.4
style exceptions for, 1
Substantive Editing Checklist for, App. A.1
transmission of edited manuscript to, 2.8
coding of heading levels, 11.1
colon
after "DOI," 6.5, 7.35
after *Note*, 13.22, 14.23
after *Source* or *Sources*, 14.21
after stub entries in tables, 14.16
capitalization after, 5.13

inappropriate uses of, 5.14
in parenthetical source citations, 5.15
with subtitles, 7.18
color
author queries in yellow highlighting, 2.36
to differentiate data lines in figures, 13.17
in maps, App. H
column heads in tables, 14.4, 14.9–.12
alignment of, 14.10
capitalization of, 14.9
content of, 14.12
unit indicators, 14.11
comma, 5.6–.12
in dates, 5.9
with introductory words and phrases, 5.7
in mathematical expressions, 5.11, 15.20
with "not" and "not only" phrases, 5.8
in numbers, 9.4
parenthetical source citations, 5.12
with questions, 5.10
serial comma, 5.6
comparisons, decimals in, 9.10, 14.19
compounds
capitalization of, 7.37
hyphens in, 2.35, 5.18
modifiers, hyphenation of, 5.19
computer-related terms, 7.34
conference papers. *See also* informally published works
source documentation, 16.30–.31, 16.30–31.31
conjunctions, using "and/or" structure, 5.29
consultants in editorial process, 2.4
"continued" lines for tables, 14.4
contributors' list, 3.1
copublications as source documents, 16.23
copyeditors, cleanup instructions for, 2.40, App. A.4
copyright issues
with Internet postings, 16.11
permissions, 4.1–.3
with source lines, 13.21, 14.21
copyright page, 2.51, 3.1, App. B.4
Corporate Secretariat's list of country names, 7.13, App. C
correction checking, 2.17, 2.50
compilation of corrections, 2.4, 2.15, 2.49
country names, 7.13, App. C. *See also* place names
abbreviations of, 8.5, App. C
codes to identify countries as data points in figures, 13.19, 13.22
with currency units, 9.14
World Integrated Trade Solution (WITS) countries, App. I
court case citations, 16.12
credit. *See* permissions
cross-cutting solutions areas (CCSAs), 7.3
cross-references in indexes, 17.5
currencies. *See* monetary amounts

D
dashes. *See also* em dash; en dash
in figure titles, 13.5
in table titles, 14.6
in text headings, 11.4
database citations, 7.26, 16.14, 16.40
date format, 5.9, 9.15–.18
contraction of range for same century, 9.17
decade reference, 9.16
in figure titles, 13.5
fiscal year, 5.30, 9.18
parenthetical source citation with author-date reference, 5.28
slashes in years, 5.30, 9.18
specific dates, 9.15
in table titles, 14.6
year ranges, 9.17
years alone, 9.16
date of access for URLs, 6.3
decades, 9.1
decimals, 9.10, 14.19
departments of World Bank, capitalization of, 7.5
Developmental Editing Checklist, App. A.1
dictionaries. *See also* Merriam-Webster's *Collegiate Dictionary*
online, 16.39
documentation. *See* source documentation
DOIs (digital object identifiers), 6.5, 7.35, 16.25
dollars. *See* monetary amounts
double brackets
author queries in, 2.36
double-digit numbers, 9.1
E
eBooks published by World Bank. *See* Category 3 publications; World Bank Studies
ECRPK
publishing categories, 1
submission of author manuscripts to, 2.31, App. A.6
edited manuscript
sent to production editor, 2.8, 2.37
sent to proofreader, 2.7, 2.46
editing. *See* editorial process; hard-copy edits; manuscript editing
editorial checklists, 2.5, 2.30, App. A.1, App. A.5
basic editorial quality control, App. A.8a
manuscript preparation guidelines, App. A.7
editorial process, 2.1–.51. *See also* manuscript editing
defined, 2.1
figures, flow of, 2.19–.22, 2.41
hard copy. *See* hard-copy edits
illustrations, flow of, 2.42
managing, 2.5–.29. *See also* production editor
maps, flow of, 2.22, 2.42

- math, flow of, 2.23–25
 - preparation guidelines, App. A.7
 - proofreading, 2.3, 2.46–51. *See also* proofreader and proofreading
 - quality control check, 2.50
 - tables, flow of, 2.26–29
 - team involved in, 2.4
 - text, flow of, 2.8–18, 2.34–40
 - editorial team, 2.4
 - editors in source citations, 16.17
 - electronic files. *See also* PDFs; redlining; Word files
 - division into separate chapter files, 2.31
 - graphics, placement in separate files, 2.33
 - Math folder, 2.43
 - production editor to provide to manuscript editor, 2.5, 2.30
 - programs other than Word or Excel, 2.45
 - electronic publications, 7.25–27
 - conference papers as, 16.31
 - eBooks published by World Bank. *See* Category 3 publications; World Bank Studies
 - Internet postings as source documentation, 16.11
 - source documentation, 16.18, 16.34–42
 - URLs, DOIs, and e-mail addresses in, 6.5
 - ellipses
 - in elided operations and relations, 5.5
 - in figure titles, 13.5
 - in headings, 11.4
 - in mathematical expressions, 15.21
 - in quotations, 5.4, 10.10
 - in tables, 14.6
 - e-mail
 - addresses
 - line breaks and, 6.2
 - word division of, 7.46
 - source of documentation, 16.13
 - spelling of, 7.34
 - em dash
 - in reference lists and bibliographies, 16.7
 - use of, 5.21
 - Word character for, 5.21
 - encyclopedia articles, online, 16.39
 - en dash
 - items of equal weight not to use, 5.20–21
 - with numbers, 9.5
 - Word character for, 5.22
 - in year ranges, 9.17
 - endnotes, 16.3. *See also* notes
 - English-language electronic publications, 7.25–27
 - English-language print publications, 7.16–24
 - capitalization of, 7.16
 - italicization of, 7.17
 - subtitles, 7.18
 - eProducts, 1
 - equations, 15.14–16. *See also* mathematical expressions
 - essays, titles of, 7.19
 - et al.*, 16.2
 - EU-10, proper form of, 8.9
 - Excel tables, editing of, 2.44
 - exceptions for client needs, 1
 - executive summary, 3.1
 - External and Corporate Relations Publishing and Knowledge (ECRPK)
 - publishing categories, 1
 - submission of author manuscripts to, 2.31, App. A.6
 - extracts. *See* quotations
- F**
- fair use, doctrine of, 4.1
 - figures and illustrations, 13.1–28. *See also* graphics
 - abbreviation of region names in, 7.12
 - abbreviation within titles, 13.5
 - axes in, 13.7, 13.11–15
 - callouts for, 2.33
 - Category 3 publications, 13.26
 - checklist for editing, 13.27
 - composition of, 13.10–20
 - consistency of treatment, 13.10
 - content of titles, 13.5
 - country codes to identify data points in, 13.19
 - credits for illustrations, 3.1
 - data lines and data points in, 13.17
 - differentiation of data lines by color or line patterns, 13.17
 - editorial process for, 2.5, 2.19–22, 2.30, 2.37, 2.41, 2.42
 - examples of edited figures, 13.28
 - frames and boxes around, 13.16
 - FY in, 9.18
 - gridlines in, 13.16
 - indexing of, 17.2
 - keys for, 13.18
 - legends for, 13.18
 - line labels, 13.18
 - multiple panels of figures in text boxes, 12.5, 13.6
 - notes in, 13.20–24
 - general notes, 13.22
 - order of, 13.23
 - source notes, 13.21
 - specific notes, 13.23, 13.24
 - superscript letters, use of, 13.20
 - numbering of, 13.3
 - numerical unit abbreviation in, 9.7
 - original, author-created, 4.2
 - percent symbol in, 9.9
 - permissions, 4.1
 - pie charts, 13.7
 - placement of, 12.8
 - “Rep.” abbreviation in, 7.13
 - slash to indicate “per” in, 5.31
 - source documentation, 4.1, 4.2
 - source line, punctuation of, 5.28
 - subtitles of, 13.6
 - within text boxes, 12.5
 - text references to figures, 13.2
 - titles of, 13.4–6
 - United Kingdom or U.K. in, 8.5
 - United States or U.S. in, 8.5
 - unit indicators, 13.7–9
 - World Bank data used in, 13.21
- files. *See* electronic files; Word files
- final pages, 2.18
- first page proofs, 2.4, 2.13
 - figures as part of, 2.21
 - proofreading of, 2.47, App. B.2
 - tables as part of, 2.28
- fiscal year, 5.30, 9.18
- flow charts, 4.2
- footnotes. *See* notes
- foreign-language publications, 7.28–29.32
 - capitalization of, 7.28
 - citation of, 16.24
 - italicization of, 7.30
 - periodicals, 7.32
 - punctuation of, 7.29
 - translation of titles of, 7.31
 - transliterated titles of, 7.30
- foreign-language quotations, 10.7
- foreign organization names, 7.9
- foreign words
 - translation of, 7.39
 - treatment of, 7.38
- foreword, 3.1
- formatting instructions for Word files, App. A.3
- forthcoming works, examples of source citations, 16.20
- foul proofs, 2.7, 2.46
- fractions, 9.1, 9.8, 9.10, 15.9
- front matter
 - indexing of, 17.2
 - order and placement of, 3.1
 - web-based publications, 3.6
- FY (fiscal year), 5.30, 9.18
- G**
- G-20, proper form of, 8.9
 - gender, use of “he or she,” 5.29
 - geographic terms. *See also* place names
 - capitalization of, 7.5, 7.12
 - country names, App. C
 - in figures, 13.5
 - in tables, 14.6
 - U.S. states, 8.6
 - Global Practices (GPs), 7.3
 - glossary, 3.1
 - graphics. *See also* figures and illustrations; tables
 - placement in separate files, 2.30, 2.33
 - provision to production editor, 2.37
 - within text boxes, 12.5
- H**
- half-title page, 3.1
 - handbooks
 - numbering of headings in, 11.3

- hardcopy edits
 - figures and illustrations, 2.41, 2.42
 - math, 2.43
 - proofreading of, 2.47
 - tables, 2.27, 2.44
 - transmission for client review and proofreading, 2.13
 - transmission for typesetting, 2.6
 - hard hyphens, 2.35, 5.18, 7.49
 - headings, 11.1–.6
 - abbreviations in, 11.5
 - capitalization of, 11.6
 - content of, 11.4
 - dashes in, 11.4
 - ellipses in, 11.4
 - format of, 11.6
 - hyphenation in, 11.6
 - levels of, 11.1
 - numbering of, 11.3
 - stacked heads, 11.2
 - headnote at top of index, 17.2
 - “he or she,” use of, 5.29
 - highlighting of author queries, 2.36
 - hyperlinking, 3.6
 - hyphenation, 5.18–.23
 - automatic, 2.35, 5.18, 7.49
 - of compounds, 5.19
 - dashes instead of hyphens, 5.20–.22
 - in headings, 11.6
 - of items of equal weight, 5.20
 - during manuscript editing process, 2.35
 - minus sign instead of hyphen, 15.22
 - in titles, 7.20
- I**
- illustrations. *See* figures and illustrations
 - importing of tables into Word, 2.45
 - inclusive numbers
 - abbreviating of, 9.6
 - in indexes, 17.4
 - incorporation of revisions, 2.4, 2.40
 - indented indexes, 17.6
 - indexes, 17.1–.8
 - abbreviations in, 17.5
 - alphabetization of, 17.7
 - capitalization in, 17.3
 - cross-references in, 17.5
 - inclusive numbers in, 17.4
 - indented style of, 17.6
 - introductory note in, 17.2
 - numbers in, 17.8
 - placement of, 3.1
 - what indexes should include, 17.2
 - India, maps of, 13.25, App. H
 - indirect questions and question marks, 5.17
 - informally published works
 - citation of, 7.23, 16.11, 16.29–.32
 - electronic sources, 16.37
 - minimum source information needed for, 16.6
 - initialisms, 8.7
 - initiatives
 - capitalization of, 7.6
 - of organizations other than World Bank, 7.10
 - institutional names. *See* World Bank Group
 - instructions to typesetter. *See* typesetter
 - Internet, 7.34. *See also* electronic publications
 - interrogative. *See* question mark
 - intranet, 7.34
 - introduction, 3.1
 - introductory note in index, 17.2
 - introductory words and phrases
 - in bulleted lists, 5.34
 - punctuation of, 5.7
 - in quotations, 10.12
 - italicization
 - of “continued” for tables, 14.4
 - of electronic publication titles, 7.25
 - of English-language print titles, 7.17
 - of foreign-language titles, 7.30
 - of mathematical characters, 15.25
 - of names of World Bank initiatives, programs, projects, etc., 7.6
 - of newspaper titles, 7.22
 - of Note, 13.22, 14.23
 - of public document titles, 7.24
 - of Source or Sources, 14.21
 - of subtitles, 7.18
 - of unit indicator
 - in figure, 13.8
 - in table, 14.7
- J**
- journals. *See* periodicals
- K**
- knowledge products, 1
- L**
- leading zero in decimal fractions, 9.10
 - legal citations, 7.24, 16.12
 - length
 - of boxes, 12.2
 - long tables, 14.4
 - line breaks
 - displayed equations, 15.15
 - URLs and e-mail addresses, 6.2
 - lists, 5.32–.34
 - bulleted, 5.34
 - numbered, 5.32, 5.34
 - run-in, 5.32
 - vertical (outline style), 5.33
 - listserver, 7.34
 - loan programs, capitalization of, 7.6
 - organizations other than World Bank, 7.10
 - location names. *See* place names
 - lowercase letters. *See* capitalization
- M**
- manuscript. *See also* client of World Bank; edited manuscript
 - breaking into chapter files, 2.31
 - client to provide original, 2.4
 - preparation guidelines, App. A.7
 - manuscript editing. *See also* manuscript editor
 - coding of heading levels, 11.1
 - defined, 2.2
 - Developmental Editing Checklist, App. A.1
 - hard copy. *See* hard-copy edits
 - Mechanical Editing Checklist, App. A.1
 - queries. *See* author queries
 - reprint permission needed, flagging for, 4.1
 - shortening of text boxes, 12.2
 - submission to ECRPK, 2.31, App. A.6
 - Substantive Editing Checklist, App. A.1
 - text, 2.34–.40
 - manuscript editor. *See also* manuscript editing
 - post-editing activities
 - figures and illustrations, 2.41, 2.42
 - incorporation of revisions, 2.4, 2.40
 - maps, 2.42
 - math and, 2.43, 15.24–.27
 - transmission of files to production editor, 2.37, 2.40
 - transmission of files to typesetter, 2.6, 2.40
 - transmission of revisions to, 2.10
 - pre-editing activities
 - breaking manuscript into chapter files by, 2.31
 - materials to be provided to, 2.5, 2.30
 - tables, 2.44
 - role of, 2.4
- maps
 - clearance of, 2.22
 - editing of, 2.42
 - guidelines for, App. H
 - of India, 13.25, App. H
 - numbering of, 13.25
 - PDFs of, 13.25
 - permissions, 4.1, 13.25
 - source line, punctuation of, 5.28
- markings, editorial. *See also* editorial process
 - coding of heading levels, 11.1
 - on hard copy. *See* hard-copy edits
 - instructions for using Adobe Acrobat, App. B.3
 - queries. *See* author queries
 - tracking of. *See* redlining
- mathematical expressions, 15.1–.27
 - abbreviations, 15.4
 - ambiguous characters, 15.26
 - breaks, 15.15
 - commas, 15.20
 - consistency between text and displayed equations, 15.24
 - consistency of, 15.2
 - definitions, 15.12
 - delimiters, 15.5
 - determinants, 15.10
 - displayed equations, 15.14–.16
 - editorial process for, 2.23–.25, 2.43, 15.24–.27

- ellipses, 15.21
 - end punctuation of, 15.19
 - formal statements, 15.12
 - fractions. *See* fractions
 - integrals, 15.7
 - italicization of characters, 15.25
 - matrices, 15.10
 - minus signs, 5.23, 15.22
 - multiple expressions in a single display, 15.17
 - multiplication sign, 5.5, 15.21, 15.23
 - numbering of displayed expressions, 15.16
 - parentheses and brackets, 5.27
 - probability, 15.13
 - punctuation of, 5.11, 15.17–23
 - radicals, 15.8
 - scalars, vectors, and tensors, 15.11
 - signs and symbols, 15.3
 - single expression with multiple lines, 15.18
 - statistics, 9.1, 15.13
 - subscripts and superscripts, 15.6, 15.27
 - summations, 15.7
 - theorems, 15.12
 - word division of, 7.47
 - matrix (in mathematics), 15.10
 - measurements
 - abbreviation of, 9.7
 - numerical expression of, 9.1
 - Mechanical Editing Checklist, App. A.1
 - Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*
 - authority for word division, 7.41
 - as editorial reference, 1
 - Microsoft Word. *See* Word files
 - minus signs, 5.23, 15.22
 - missing material in quotations, 10.13
 - monetary amounts, 9.1, 9.12–14
 - billions, 9.12
 - currency symbols, use of, 9.13
 - currency types and units, 9.14
 - list by country, App. D
 - U.S. dollars, 9.13
 - multiauthor books
 - citation of, 16.8, 16.16
 - table of contents, 2.5, 2.30, 3.2
 - multiplication sign
 - cross, 15.23
 - dot, 5.5, 15.21
 - multivolume works, examples of source citations, 16.22
- N**
- names, 7.2–32
 - brand names, 7.15
 - of organizations, 7.8–10
 - personal names, 7.11
 - place names, 7.12–14
 - in source documentation. *See* source documentation
 - titles of works, 7.16–28, 16.9. *See also* titles of works
 - of World Bank units, 7.2–7
- O**
- navigation in web-based publications, 3.6
 - newspapers. *See also* periodicals
 - foreign newspapers' names and cities, 7.32
 - titles, 7.22
 - news releases. *See also* informally published works
 - source documentation, 16.32
 - notes
 - about monetary amounts, 9.12–14
 - defining abbreviations and symbols, 13.9
 - nonstandard abbreviations and symbols, 13.22
 - in tables, 14.8, 14.12, 14.15, 14.16, 14.18
 - within figures, 13.20–24. *See also* figures and illustrations
 - indexing of, 17.2
 - introductory note in index, 17.2
 - placement of, 3.1, 3.4, 16.3
 - source notes. *See* source documentation
 - within tables, 14.20, 14.22–24. *See also* tables
 - within text boxes, 12.6
 - wording of Note, 13.22, 14.23
 - "not" phrases, 5.8
 - "not only" phrases, 5.8
 - numbered lists, 5.32, 5.34
 - numbers, 9.1–18
 - abbreviating of numerical units, 9.7
 - in axes, 13.11
 - at beginning of sentence, 9.2
 - cardinals and ordinals, treatment of, 9.1
 - commas in, 9.4
 - consistency, 9.3
 - in dates. *See* date format
 - double-digit numbers, 9.1
 - en dashes with, 9.5
 - fractions, 9.1, 9.8, 9.10
 - inclusive numbers
 - abbreviating of, 9.6
 - in indexes, 17.4
 - in indexes, 17.8
 - less than one, 9.10
 - monetary amounts, 9.1
 - money. *See* monetary amounts
 - numerals vs. words, 9.1
 - percentages, 9.1, 9.9
 - physical quantities, 9.1
 - punctuation in, 9.4–6
 - ratios, 9.1, 9.11
 - spelled-out numbers, capitalization in, 11.6
 - for table columns, 14.12
 - word division of numerals, 7.43
- P**
- organizations other than World Bank
 - as authors of source documents, 16.2
 - foreign organizations, 7.9
 - as publishers, 16.7
 - references to, 7.8–10
 - spelling of, 7.8
 - overview, 3.1
 - boxes in, 12.3
 - numbering of figures in, 13.3
 - numbering of tables in, 14.3
 - page numbers in source citations, 16.2
 - page proofs. *See also* first page proofs
 - circulation of, 2.13
 - client review, 2.17–18
 - compilation of changes, 2.15
 - correction checking of, 2.17
 - figures and illustrations as part of, 2.20
 - foul proofs, 2.7, 2.46
 - proofreading of, 2.4, 2.7, 2.46
 - revisions of, 2.14
 - parentheses, 5.24–28
 - in mathematical expressions, 5.27
 - within parentheses, 5.25
 - punctuation, 5.3
 - in quotations for insertions by original authors, 5.26, 10.11
 - translation of foreign-language titles in, 7.9, 7.31
 - parenthetical source citations
 - colons and semicolons in, 5.15
 - commas in, 5.12
 - parentheses in, 5.28
 - parts of the book, 3.1–6. *See also specific parts (e.g., table of contents)*
 - part title, 3.1
 - PDFs
 - client use of, 2.9, 2.14
 - figures and illustrations provided as, 2.20
 - instructions for using Adobe Acrobat, App. B.3
 - maps in low-resolution, 13.25
 - page proofs provided as, 2.13–14
 - proofreading of, 2.7, 2.46–51, App. B.3
 - redlined, 2.8
 - tables provided as, 2.28
 - "per," use of slash for, 5.31
 - percentages, 9.1, 9.9
 - percent symbol, 9.9
 - period (punctuation)
 - ellipses in quotations, 5.4
 - in foreign subtitles, 7.29
 - periodicals
 - article titles, 7.19
 - electronic sources, 16.35–36
 - examples of source documentation, 16.26–28
 - foreign-language titles, 7.32
 - italicization of name of, 7.17
 - minimum source information needed for, 16.6
 - month instead of issue number, 16.28

- no issue number, 16.27
- “the” as initial word of title, 7.22
- permissions, 4.1–3, 10.1
 - for figures, 13.21
 - for illustrations, 3.1
 - source documentation, 4.2
 - written, 4.1
- personal communications as source
 - documentation, 16.13
- personal names, 7.11
 - word division of, 7.42
- photographs. *See* figures and illustrations
- phrases
 - alternative words and phrases, App. G
 - introductory. *See* introductory words and phrases
- physical quantities, 9.1, 9.7
- pictorial elements. *See* figures and illustrations
- “pictures,” tables imported into Word as, 2.45
- pie charts, 13.7. *See also* figures and illustrations
- place names, 7.12–.14
 - abbreviation of, 8.3–5
 - capitalization of defined regions, 7.12
 - confusion with Bank’s regional vice presidencies (“Regions”), 7.12, 8.3
 - country names, 7.13
 - for foreign periodical titles, 7.32
 - for newspaper titles, 7.22
- postal abbreviations, 8.6
- preface, 3.1
- print coordinator’s role, 2.18
- probability and statistics, 15.13
- proceedings of conferences. *See* informally published works
- production editor
 - additional rounds of review and, 2.11, 2.38
 - approval of final pages and, 2.18
 - compilation of corrections by, 2.15
 - figures and illustrations, flow of, 2.19–22
 - information and instructions provided by, 2.5–7
 - information provided by, 2.11, 2.30
 - managing editorial process by, 2.5–29
 - materials to be provided by, 2.5–7
 - to manuscript editor, 2.5, 2.30
 - to proofreader, 2.7, 2.46
 - to typesetter, 2.6
 - queries to, 2.36
 - role of, 2.4
 - text, flow of, 2.8–.18
 - transmission of edited files to typesetter
 - figures and illustrations, 2.19
 - text, 2.6, 2.12
- professional titles, 7.11
- programs and projects, capitalization of, 7.6
 - organizations other than World Bank, 7.10
- pronouns, use of “he or she,” 5.29

- proofreader and proofreading
 - checking of corrections on revised page proofs, 2.17
 - checklist, 2.7, 2.46, 2.47, App. A.5, App. B.1–2
 - compilation of corrections by, 2.4, 2.49
 - copyright page, 2.51
 - correction checking on revised page proofs, 2.50
 - definition of proofreading, 2.3
 - first page proofs, 2.4, 2.13, 2.47, App. B
 - instructions for using Adobe Acrobat, App. B.3
 - materials to be provided to, 2.7, 2.46
 - PDFs or hard copy, 2.7, 2.46
 - quality control check, 2.50
 - queries by, 2.48
 - revisions permissible, 2.48
 - role of, 2.4, 2.46–51
 - second and subsequent page proofs, 2.4, 2.17, 2.50, App. B
 - word-for-word comparison to edited manuscript, 2.47
- proofs. *See* page proofs
- proper names, 7.42. *See also* names
- public document citations, 7.24, 16.12, 16.33
- publisher information in source information, 16.7
- publishing categories, 1
- punctuation, 5.1–34. *See also* specific types
 - fonts and, 5.1
 - of foreign-language publications, 7.29
 - of lists, 5.32–34
 - of mathematical expressions, 5.11, 15.17–23
 - with quotation marks, 5.2, 10.9
 - of titles, 7.20
 - typography for, 5.1
 - of URLs, 6.1
- Q**
- quality control check, 2.50, App. A.8a–8b
- quantities
 - abbreviation of, 9.7
 - numerical expression of, 9.1
- queries, 2.48. *See also* author queries
- question marks, 5.16–17
 - in indirect questions, 5.17
 - within sentence, 5.16
- question within a sentence, 5.16
- quotation marks
 - around quotations, 10.8
 - around titles
 - of articles, feature stories, chapters, etc., 7.19, 7.25, 16.26–28
 - of unpublished or informally published works, 7.23
 - of Web pages, 7.27
 - blog entries in, 7.27
 - punctuation with, 5.2, 10.9
 - single, 10.8

- quotation marks, 10.1–13
 - attribution and permission, 4.2
 - block quotations, 10.6
 - brackets for non-author insertions within, 5.26, 10.11
 - capitalization of initial letter in, 10.5
 - credit for, 10.1
 - ellipses in, 5.4, 10.10
 - in foreign language, 10.7
 - introductory phrases for, 10.12
 - missing material, 10.13
 - paraphrasing of, 10.6
 - parentheses for original author insertions
 - within, 5.26, 10.11
 - parentheses within, 10.11
 - permissible changes to, 10.3
 - permissions for. *See* permissions
 - quotation marks around, 10.8
 - run-in style, 10.4
 - set-off style, 10.4, 10.6
 - source citations, 10.2
 - treatment of, 10.4–7
- R**
- radicals in mathematical expressions, 15.8
- range of years, 9.17
- ratios, 9.1, 9.11
- recto or verso pages, 3.1
- redlining
 - clean files not to contain, 2.40
 - client review to use, 2.9
 - manuscript editor to use, 2.8, 2.34, 2.37
 - production editor compiling to send to manuscript editor, 2.10
- redundant expressions, App. G
- reference lists
 - author names in, 16.2
 - for boxes, 12.7
 - distinguished from bibliographies, 3.4, 16.5
 - placement of, 3.1, 3.4, 16.4, 16.42
 - source documentation, 4.2, 16.42
- regional vice presidencies (“Regions”), 7.4
 - abbreviation of, 8.3
 - capitalization of, 7.5
 - confusion with geographic place names, 7.12
- regions of world. *See* geographic terms
- regression tables, 14.12
- “Rep.” abbreviation, use of, 7.13
- reprint permissions. *See* permissions
- review process. *See* client of World Bank; editorial process
- run-in lists, 5.32
 - word division of, 7.45
- run-in quotations, 10.4
- S**
- sample publication, production editor to provide, 2.5, 2.7, 2.30, 2.46
- schedule provided by production editor, 2.5–7, 2.30, 2.46

second page proofs, 2.4, 2.17, 2.50. See *also* page proofs

semicolon
 in foreign subtitles, 7.29
 in parenthetical source citations, 5.15
 between two subtitles, 7.18

sentences in bulleted lists, 5.34

sentence-style capitalization. See capitalization

serial comma, 5.6

series
 examples of source citations, 16.21
 information, 3.1

series information, 3.1

shortened titles, 7.21

single quotation marks, 10.8

slash, 5.29–31
 with alternatives, 5.29
 for “per,” 5.31
 with years, 5.30, 9.18

source documentation, 16.1–42
 author-date style, 4.2, 16.2
 bibliographies. See bibliographies
 blogs, 16.38
 citations, 16.2, 16.3
 conference papers as, 16.30–31, 16.30–31.31
 copublications, 16.10
 databases as. See database citations
 electronic publications, 16.18, 16.34–42
 e-mail as, 16.13
 em dash for repeated author names, 16.7
 examples, 16.15–42
 figures, 13.21
 informal publications, 16.11, 16.29–32, 16.37
 legal citations, 16.12
 minimum information needed, 16.6
 multiple authors, 16.2, 16.8
 names of authors, 16.7
 news releases as, 16.32
 notes, 4.2, 16.3
 organizations as authors, 16.2
 periodicals as, 16.26–28, 16.35–36
 permissions, 4.2
 personal communications as, 16.13
 placement of, 3.4, 16.42
 public documents as, 16.12, 16.33
 reference lists. See reference lists
 websites as, 16.41
 working papers as, 16.29

source lines. See *also* permissions
 citation form, 16.2
 figures, 13.21
 photographs, 13.26
 tables, 4.2, 14.21

special characters. See symbols

spelling. See *also* transliteration; word treatment
 of computer-related terms, 7.34
 of organization names, 7.8
 of titles, 7.20

square brackets. See brackets

stacked heads, 11.2

states, postal abbreviations for, 8.6

statistics, 9.1, 15.13

sticky notes for queries, 2.48

strategies
 capitalization of, 7.6
 organizations other than World Bank, 7.10

stub entries in tables, 14.13–17

style sheet
 production editor to provide, 2.5–7, 2.30, 2.46
 sample, App. A.2a–2b

subscripts and superscripts
 in mathematical expressions, 15.6, 15.27
 in notes. See notes

Substantive Editing Checklist, App. A.1

subtitles
 with colon, 7.18
 of English-language publications, 7.18
 in figure titles, 13.6
 of foreign-language publications, 7.29

superscripts. See subscripts and superscripts

symbols
 of currency types, 9.13, 9.14
 em dash, 5.21
 en dash, 5.22
 in mathematical expressions, 15.3
 minus sign, 5.23, 15.22
 multiplication sign, 5.5, 15.21, 15.23
 percent symbol, 9.9
 in tables, 14.8, 14.11, 14.12, 14.18
 trademark symbols, 7.15
 in unit indicator
 in figure, 13.9
 in table, 14.8

T

table of contents, 2.5, 2.30, 3.2
 placement of, 3.1

tables, 14.1–24. See *also* graphics
 abbreviation in
 numerical unit, 9.7
 region names, 7.12
 “Rep.,” 7.13
 U.K. or U.S., 8.5
 blank cells in, 14.18
 body of, 14.18–20
 broadside, 14.4
 column heads, 14.4, 14.9–12
 “continued” lines, 14.4
 decimals in, 14.19
 editorial process for, 2.26–29, 2.44, 2.45
 FY in, 9.18
 indexing of, 17.2
 long tables, 14.4
 notes within, 14.20, 14.22–24
 general notes, 14.23
 order of, 14.22

source notes, 14.21
 specific notes, 14.24

numbering of, 14.3

percent symbol in, 9.9

placement of, 12.8

slash to indicate “per” in, 5.31

source line, 4.2
 punctuation of, 5.28

stub entries, 14.13–17
 capitalization of, 14.13
 content of, 14.16
 main entries and subentries, 14.17
 order of, 14.14
 unit indicators, 14.15

within text boxes, 12.5

titles of, 14.5, 14.6

unit indicators, 14.7, 14.8, 14.15

vertical, 14.4

templates, 2.6

text. See *also* specific elements
 boxes. See text boxes
 editing of, 2.34–40
 headings. See headings
 indexing of, 17.2
 placement and order of, 3.1
 production flow of, 2.8–18
 references to figures, 13.2
 revisions to
 client’s revisions, 2.39
 incorporation of, 2.4, 2.40
 proofreader’s revisions, 2.48

sources. See source documentation

text boxes, 12.1–8
 citing sources for, 12.7
 coding text material for, 2.32
 figures not framed by, 13.16
 graphics within, 12.5
 indexing of, 17.2
 length of, 12.2
 multiple panels of figures in, 12.5, 13.6
 notes within, 12.6
 numbering of, 12.3
 numbering of figures in, 13.3
 numbering of tables in, 14.3
 placement in text, 2.32, 12.8
 reference to, within text, 12.1
 shortening of, 12.2
 source documentation, 4.2
 titles of, 12.4

“the” as initial word
 of acronym or initialism, 8.7
 of title, 7.22

three dots. See ellipses

title page, 3.1

titles of axes, 13.13, 13.14

titles of chapters
 as first level of text, 11.1
 punctuation of, 7.19

titles of figures, 13.4–6

titles of tables, 14.5, 14.6

titles of text boxes, 12.4

titles of works, 7.16–32
 articles, chapters, feature stories, etc., 7.19

- blogs, 7.27
 - changes to, 7.20
 - database titles, 7.26
 - English-language electronic publications, 7.25–27
 - English-language print publications, 7.16–24
 - foreign-language publications, 7.28–29.32
 - informally published works, 7.23
 - newspaper titles, 7.22
 - not to be used for subject of work, 7.17
 - numbers spelled out in, 11.6
 - public documents, 7.24
 - shortened titles, 7.21
 - subtitles, 7.18
 - unpublished works, 7.23, 16.11
 - websites and web pages, 7.27
 - tracking feature. *See* redlining
 - trademark symbols, 7.15
 - translation
 - brackets and parentheses, use of, 5.24, 7.9
 - of foreign-language terms, 7.39
 - of foreign organization names, 7.9
 - of foreign publication names, 7.31
 - transliteration
 - of organizational names, 7.9
 - of publication names, 7.30
 - treatment of, 7.40
 - typesetter
 - file transmission
 - figures, 2.4
 - figures and illustrations, 2.19, 2.20
 - math, 2.4, 2.23
 - tables, 2.4, 2.27
 - text, 2.6, 2.12
 - materials to be provided to, 2.6
 - minus sign, instruction for, 5.23, 15.22
 - revised page proofs provided by, 2.16
 - role of, 2.4
 - transmission of compiled changes to, 2.16
 - typesetting transmittal forms, 2.6
 - typographic considerations
 - for punctuation, 5.1
 - word division and, 7.48
- U**
- U.K., use of, 8.5
 - United Kingdom
 - abbreviation of, 8.5
 - billions, 9.12
 - United States
 - abbreviation of, 8.5
 - postal abbreviations for states, 8.6
 - unit indicators
 - in figures, 13.7–9
 - in tables, 14.7, 14.8, 14.11
 - units of World Bank. *See also* World Bank Group
 - capitalization of, 7.5
 - structure of, 7.2–7
 - unpublished works, 7.23, 16.11
 - URLs
 - access dates, 6.3
 - full address with http: or https:, 6.4, 7.35
 - for informal electronic publications, 16.34
 - line breaks and, 6.2
 - protocol in name, 7.35
 - punctuation of, 6.1
 - in source information, 6.5, 16.34
 - word division of, 7.46
 - U.S., use of, 8.5
- V**
- vendors in editorial process, 2.4
 - vertical lists, 5.33
 - vice presidential units (VPUs)
 - capitalization of, 7.5
 - structure of, 7.4–5
- W**
- web-based publications. *See also* electronic publications
 - incorporating navigation, hyperlinking, and adapting front and back matter, 3.6
 - web pages and websites
 - source documentation, 16.41
 - spelling of “website” and “web page,” 7.34
 - titles of, 7.27
 - word division, 7.41–49
 - of abbreviations, 7.44
 - authority for, 7.41
 - of e-mail addresses, 7.46
 - of mathematical expressions, 7.47
 - of numerals, 7.43
 - of personal names, 7.42
 - of proper nouns, 7.42
 - of run-in lists, 7.45
 - typographic considerations, 7.48
 - of URLs, 7.46
 - Word files
 - all changes accepted, 2.37
 - boxes, placement in, 2.32, 12.8
 - client changes in, 2.9
 - Comments feature not to be used, 2.36
 - edited manuscript with edits accepted, 2.8
 - editing and approval procedures, 2.8–.18
 - em dash character, 5.21
 - en dash character, 5.22
 - formatting instructions, App. A.3
 - production editor’s tracked changes in, 2.10
 - tables, editing of, 2.26, 2.44
 - tracking changes in. *See* redlining
 - word treatment, 7.1–49, App. F
 - alternative words and phrases, App. G
 - computer-related terms, 7.34
 - medical terms, 7.36
 - names, 7.2–.32
 - URLs, 7.35
 - word division, 7.41–49
 - World Bank terms, 7.33
 - working papers. *See* informally published works; unpublished works
 - World Bank client. *See* client of World Bank
 - World Bank data, 4.2
 - in figures, 13.21
 - World Bank Group
 - capitalization of initiatives, loans, programs, projects, and strategies, 7.6
 - capitalization of unit names, 7.5
 - cross-cutting solutions areas (CCSAs), 7.3
 - Global Practices (GPs), 7.3
 - references to, 7.2–7, 13.21
 - vice presidential regions, 7.4–5
 - World Bank Studies. *See also* Category 3 publications
 - citation in source documentation, 16.25
 - editorial quality control checklist, App. A.8b
 - manuscript in single file for submitting, 2.31
 - World Integrated Trade Solution (WITS) countries, App. I
 - written permissions, 4.1
- X**
- x as multiplication sign, 15.23
 - x-axis. *See* axes in figures
- Y**
- y-axis. *See* axes in figures
 - years. *See* date format
 - yellow highlighting, author queries in, 2.36
- Z**
- zero
 - in axes, 13.11
 - leading zero in decimal fractions, 9.10, 14.19



WORLD BANK GROUP

SKU 33006